



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

GoogleTM books

<https://books.google.com>



EXERCISES
ON THE
SHORTER LATIN PRIMER

KENNEDY

ED.

HILKINSON

25V

11355

S
25
V
1755

C.1

S 25 V 11755

Kennedy, Benjamin Hall,
Exercises on the shorter Latin

C.1



2855186-10

Z1G

לפי מעיון תצא תורה

Inter University
Jewish Federation of
Great Britain & Ireland.

Presented to the
Jerusalem University Library

by
The Rabbi Abraham
Memorial Library
LEEDS.

Massels. Manchester.

Lena Pillico.

February 22nd Monday.
1892

L. Marcan
2 St Chad's Villa
Far Headingley
or
Leeds Grammar
School

39059



רגילה

19235680

מס' שלופה:

7224

לקוח: הספרייה הלאומית בע"מ (חל"צ)

1

מחוז: כללי

72240100

מחלקה: אוספי הספרייה

הארכיון

שדות ארכיון וניהול

68528553

מיקום: 13-11-2905-7 גובה: 13 דרישה:

6 תיק:

722425733-8189 תיבה:

פרטים: 285518610

עד:

עד:

תאריכים מ:

ספרונים מ:

25V11755 הספר פרטי הספר

אזר: ירושלים

NLI-V-01019

12:33:04 16/02/2021 תאריך הפקדה

נתון נוסף:

עמוד 78 מתוך 171

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN COURSE.

The **REVISED LATIN PRIMER.** Fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The **SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.** Fcp. 8vo. 1s.

The **PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.** Edited with the sanction of the Head Masters of the Nine Schools included in Her Majesty's Commission, viz. Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylors', Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow and Charterhouse. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, STEPS to LATIN; Easy Companion Books to the Public School Latin Primer for Beginners. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. PART I. *Accidence and Simple Construction*, price 2s. 6d. PART II. *Syntax*, price 3s. 6d.

The KEY to PARTS I. and II. price 5s. (For Teachers only.)

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Part III. Manual of the Rules of Construction in the Latin Compound Sentence; being a SUPPLEMENT to the Public School Latin Primer. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. price 1s.

CURRICULUM STILI LATINI, or Higher Exercises in Latin Prose Composition; exemplifying principally the Latin Compound Sentence, and also Latin Syntax generally, for viva voce as well as written use. By B. H. KENNEDY, Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 4s. 6d.—KEY, price 7s. 6d. (For Teachers only.)

PALÆSTRA LATINA, or Second Latin Reading Book; adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 5s.

. The above four books form a Course of Latin Instruction, and are specially adapted to facilitate and extend the use of the Public School Latin Primer.

The **CHILD'S LATIN PRIMER, or First Latin** Lessons; with Questions and Exercises, adapted to the principles of the Public School Latin Primer. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 2s.

The **CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE**, extracted from Canon KENNEDY's Child's Latin Primer; containing all that is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. 1s.

An **ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR** of the **LATIN** LANGUAGE, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

The **PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR**, for the Use of Schools, Colleges, and Private Students. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Sixth Edition, revised, with Additions. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The **WORKS of VIRGIL**, Latin Text, with English Commentary and Appendices. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Third Edition, revised and enlarged with Two Maps. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

London: LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.



Fcp. 8vo. price 2s. 6d.

THE REVISED LATIN PRIMER.

BY

BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Regius Professor of Greek; Canon of Ely.

EXTRACTS FROM THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

THIS book is a complete revision of the Public School Latin Primer.

The report of the Public School Commission of 1862 having recommended the use of a common Latin Grammar in Public Schools, the Head-Masters of the Schools included in that Commission resolved to adopt my Elementary Latin Grammar, which had for some years been widely used, as the basis of such a common Grammar, and the Public School Latin Primer, prepared in accordance with that resolution, was published with their sanction in the year 1866.

During the period which has since elapsed, various improvements have from time to time occurred to me or been suggested by others. But, looking at the joint authority under which the Primer was issued, I did not feel myself free to introduce into it the alterations which under other circumstances I should have made. When, however, I found that a revision of the Primer was generally desired, and when, after communication with the Conference of Head-Masters, I found myself in a position to act in the matter of revision upon my own responsibility, I gladly entered upon the work of which the present Revised Primer is the result.

The greatest care has been taken to make the arrangement in respect of form as clear and plain as possible. For this purpose I have (1) brought into the text under the appropriate headings the matter which in the original Primer is contained in Appendix I; (2) omitted such technical terms as seemed to be reasonably open to objection.

By the same Author.

THE SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.

Fcp. 8vo. price ONE SHILLING.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

THIS little book is published in compliance with a wish expressed to me by a large number of Masters, including many teachers in Preparatory Schools, and in the lower forms of Public Schools.

It is intended to be a simple manual for beginners in Latin, preparatory to the use of the Revised Latin Primer.

In order to facilitate the passage of the learner from one book to the other, and also to make it possible for them to be used side by side if necessary, this Shorter Primer has been made, as far as it goes, in the main identical with the Revised Primer, and arranged on the same plan.

It contains the memorial portion of the Accidence, with a few of the most important notes and explanations, and the more elementary parts of the Syntax of the Simple Sentence.

A short outline of the Compound Sentence, which did not form part of my original plan, has been added in accordance with the desire of several experienced teachers. In this part it has been necessary, for the sake of brevity, to make the arrangement and wording somewhat different from that of the Revised Primer.

In this book, as in the Revised Primer, I have endeavoured to simplify the marking of quantity by placing the mark of quantity, as a rule, only on the long vowels. It must therefore be noted that vowels not marked are generally to be taken as short, short quantity being only marked where it has seemed necessary to guard against mistake.

~~~~~  
London: LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.



**EXERCISES**  
**ON THE**  
**SHORTER LATIN PRIMER**

PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
LONDON

37575 4/1/11 65  
17021

EXERCISES  
ON THE  
SHORTER LATIN PRIMER

BY  
BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

BY  
M. G. AND J. E. KENNEDY  
AND  
H. WILKINSON, M.A.

LONDON  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
AND NEW YORK : 15 EAST 16<sup>th</sup> STREET  
1891

JOHN H. HARRIS

1891-1901

1901

~~478.2=2~~  
~~KEN, EX,~~

25V11755

## PREFACE

---

THE plan of this book was formed by Dr. Kennedy, and was to have been carried out with the help of Mr. Wilkinson of Merton College, Oxford, whom he had invited to take part in the work. After some unavoidable delay, it has now been completed by those members of Dr. Kennedy's family who assisted him in the revision of the Latin Primer, working in conjunction with Mr. Wilkinson. The authors have received much valuable help and advice from Mr. Page of Charterhouse, which they acknowledge with sincere thanks.

It is assumed that, before using this book, a beginner will learn the elementary accidence, and perhaps do some easy exercises on it. The book follows as closely as possible the order of the Syntax in the Shorter Latin Primer, but a few exercises have been introduced on some rules not included in the Shorter Primer, in which practice at an early stage seemed desirable. The headings of such exercises are taken from the Revised Primer, and are

distinguished by the absence of section numbers. A few rules from the Revised Primer have also been added as notes.

Each exercise is divided into two parts. These parts are intended to be of equal difficulty, and may be used either as alternative courses, or as two successive exercises on the same rule. Recapitulatory exercises are placed at intervals.



# CONTENTS

---

## *EXERCISES ON THE SIMPLE SENTENCE*

| EXERCISE                                                             | PAGE |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| I. VERB AND SUBJECT . . . . .                                        | 1    |
| II. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .                                | 2    |
| III. TRANSITIVE VERB AND OBJECT . . . . .                            | 3    |
| IV. NOMINATIVE CASE WITH COPULATIVE VERBS . . . . .                  | 4    |
| V. COMPOSITE SUBJECT . . . . .                                       | 5    |
| VI. APPPOSITION . . . . .                                            | 6    |
| VII. RELATIVE PRONOUN . . . . .                                      | 8    |
| VIII. RELATIVE PRONOUN . . . . .                                     | 9    |
| IX. VOCATIVE CASE . . . . .                                          | 10   |
| X. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                          | 11   |
| XI. ACCUSATIVE CASE: FACTITIVE VERBS . . . . .                       | 12   |
| XII. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE; COGNATE ACCUSATIVE . . . . .                 | 13   |
| XIII. DATIVE CASE: REMOTER OBJECT WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS . . . . .    | 14   |
| XIV. DATIVE CASE: REMOTER OBJECT WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS . . . . .   | 15   |
| XV. DATIVE CASE: REMOTER OBJECT WITH ADJECTIVES . . . . .            | 16   |
| XVI. DATIVE CASE: REMOTER OBJECT WITH COMPOUND VERBS . . . . .       | 17   |
| XVII. DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE, POSSESSOR, PURPOSE . . . . .              | 18   |
| XVIII. IMPERATIVE . . . . .                                          | 19   |
| XIX. NEGATIVE ADVERBS . . . . .                                      | 20   |
| XX. PROHIBITIONS AND NEGATIVES . . . . .                             | 21   |
| XXI. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                        | 22   |
| XXII. SINGLE QUESTIONS . . . . .                                     | 23   |
| XXIII. ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .    | 24   |
| XXIV. ABLATIVE CASE: SEPARATION . . . . .                            | 25   |
| XXV. ABLATIVE CASE: COMPARISON . . . . .                             | 26   |
| XXVI. ABLATIVE CASE: ASSOCIATION, QUALITY, RESPECT, MANNER . . . . . | 27   |

| EXERCISE                                                                           | PAGE |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| XXVII. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .                                                 | 28   |
| XXVIII. ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT . . . . .                                            | 30   |
| XXIX. ABLATIVE CASE : INSTRUMENT, CAUSE . . . . .                                  | 31   |
| XXX. ABLATIVE CASE WITH DEPONENT VERBS . . . . .                                   | 32   |
| XXXI. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE. . . . .                                   | 33   |
| XXXII. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                                    | 34   |
| XXXIII. ABLATIVE OF PRICE ; GENITIVE OF VALUE . . . . .                            | 35   |
| XXXIV. GENITIVE CASE : DEFINITIVE, ATTRIBUTIVE . . . . .                           | 36   |
| XXXV. GENITIVE CASE : POSSESSIVE, QUALITY, AUTHOR . . . . .                        | 37   |
| XXXVI. GENITIVE CASE : PARTITIVE . . . . .                                         | 38   |
| XXXVII. GENITIVE CASE : OBJECTIVE . . . . .                                        | 39   |
| XXXVIII. GENITIVE CASE WITH VERBS OF REMEMBERING, FORGETTING,<br>PUTTING . . . . . | 40   |
| XXXIX. PLACE WHERE . . . . .                                                       | 42   |
| XL. PLACE WHITHER AND WHENCE . . . . .                                             | 44   |
| XLI. ADVERBS OF PLACE . . . . .                                                    | 46   |
| XLII. TIME WHEN . . . . .                                                          | 47   |
| XLIII. TIME WITHIN AND DURING WHICH . . . . .                                      | 48   |
| XLIV. SPACE . . . . .                                                              | 49   |
| XLV. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                                      | 51   |
| XLVI. IMPERSONAL VERBS : CASE CONSTRUCTION . . . . .                               | 52   |
| XLVII. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION . . . . .                                              | 54   |
| XLVIII. PRONOUNS . . . . .                                                         | 55   |
| XLIX. PRONOUNS . . . . .                                                           | 57   |
| L. PRONOUNS . . . . .                                                              | 59   |
| LI. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT . . . . .                                                | 60   |
| LII. PROLATIVE INFINITIVE . . . . .                                                | 62   |
| LIII. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                                     | 64   |
| LIV. GERUND . . . . .                                                              | 65   |
| LV. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE . . . . .                                                 | 67   |
| LVI. SUPINES . . . . .                                                             | 68   |
| LVII. PARTICIPLES . . . . .                                                        | 70   |
| LVIII. ADJECTIVES . . . . .                                                        | 72   |
| LIX. CONJUNCTIONS AND CORRELATION . . . . .                                        | 74   |
| LX. RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                                       | 76   |

EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

| EXERCISE | SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES                                     | PAGE |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------|------|
| LXI.     | INDIRECT STATEMENT: ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE . . . . . | 77   |
| LXII.    | INDIRECT STATEMENT: ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE . . . . . | 78   |
| LXIII.   | INDIRECT COMMAND OR REQUEST . . . . .                    | 80   |
| LXIV.    | INDIRECT QUESTION . . . . .                              | 82   |
|          | ADVERBIAL CLAUSES                                        |      |
| LXV.     | CONSECUTIVE . . . . .                                    | 84   |
| LXVI.    | FINAL . . . . .                                          | 86   |
| LXVII.   | CAUSAL . . . . .                                         | 88   |
| LXVIII.  | TEMPORAL . . . . .                                       | 90   |
| LXIX.    | CONDITIONAL . . . . .                                    | 92   |
| LXX.     | CONCESSIVE AND COMPARATIVE . . . . .                     | 94   |
|          | ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES                                       |      |
| LXXI.    | RELATIVE PRONOUN WITH CONJUNCTIVE . . . . .              | 96   |
| LXXII.   | RELATIVE CLAUSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA . . . . .             | 98   |
| LXXIII.  | RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                 | 100  |
| LXXIV.   | RECAPITULATORY . . . . .                                 | 101  |
|          | VOCABULARY . . . . .                                     | 103  |
|          | NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES . . . . .                    | 137  |



# EXERCISES

Two words joined by a hyphen are to be rendered by one word in Latin.  
Words in round brackets are to be omitted.

Words or phrases which are not to be literally translated into Latin are printed in italics. They are followed in every case by a square bracket, containing either the Latin word or phrase to be used, or another English word or phrase, which takes the place of the one in italics, and is to be literally translated.

## I.

### Verb and Subject.

#### 125 A Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person :

Tempus fugit.  
*Time flies.*

Libri leguntur.  
*Books are read.*

#### 130 The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case :

Anni fugiunt.  
*Years flee.*

Labitur aetas. Ov.  
*Time glides away.*

*Note.*—The Personal Pronoun is used when it is needed for emphasis or contrast, but otherwise it is expressed only by the Verb ending.

- |                                             |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. The city was growing.                    | 9. The grass is growing.               |
| 2. The gates are open.                      | 10. A wall had fallen.                 |
| 3. Amulius reigned.                         | 11. Statues have stood.                |
| 4. You [plur.] will conquer, they will fly. | 12. You [plur.] will have come.        |
| 5. A soldier had run.                       | 13. A boy was standing.                |
| 6. Your [plur.] temples were burning.       | 14. Thou hast commanded, we will obey. |
| 7. I will go within.                        | 15. The chiefs had remained.           |
| 8. The birds will sing.                     | 16. Flowers were being gathered.       |

- |                                                  |                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. The judge is sitting.                         | 9. A tumult is heard.                          |
| 2. The laurel trees quiver.                      | 10. The soldiers will fall.                    |
| 3. Voices were heard.                            | 11. The lion is caught.                        |
| 4. The moon was shining.                         | 12. Wealth had increased.                      |
| 5. The light goes down, (and) the youths depart. | 13. You will have run.                         |
| 6. We have conquered.                            | 14. The kingdoms remained.                     |
| 7. The kingdoms were being seized.               | 15. Soon I shall have gone.                    |
| 8. The tribunes had come.                        | 16. You [plur.] are playing, I am standing by. |

## II.

## Agreement of Adjectives.

- 126** An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with the Substantive it qualifies :

*Vir bonus bonam uxorem habet.*

*The good man has a good wife.*

*Verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. Cic.*

*True friendships are everlasting.*

*Note.*—In the Passive Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses, the Participle agrees with the Subject.

- |                                            |                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. The high walls of the temple fell.      | 9. The two brothers fought bravely.                              |
| 2. Our ships are many.                     | 10. Many books will be written.                                  |
| 3. The soldiers have been killed.          | 11. The attack of the enemy was fierce, the slaughter was great. |
| 4. Bright stars are shining.               | 12. Our ambassadors are sent.                                    |
| 5. The voices of many birds are heard.     | 13. The number of the flocks increases.                          |
| 6. Part of the citadel was taken.          | 14. We have all been conquered and taken-captive.                |
| 7. We have spoken, you [plur.] have heard. |                                                                  |
| 8. The horses of the soldiers were white.  |                                                                  |
- 
- |                                                    |                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. The way is short.                               | 10. The toil of the long year perishes.                                                   |
| 2. Now a new year begins.                          | 11. The light of the moon is clear.                                                       |
| 3. The grape is not-yet ripe.                      | 12. The ancient temples of the gods fall.                                                 |
| 4. Presents have been given.                       | 13. The battle was renewed, and all the enemy <i>took to flight</i> [turned their backs]. |
| 5. The soldiers of our enemies had been conquered. | 14. Your field has been ploughed, and the seeds are being sown.                           |
| 6. The hours seemed long.                          |                                                                                           |
| 7. Parents are dear, children are dear.            |                                                                                           |
| 8. The legions were dispersed, the town was taken. |                                                                                           |
| 9. Caius Gracchus was killed.                      |                                                                                           |



## III.

## Transitive Verb and Object.

**133** The nearer Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case :

*Agricola colit agros; uxor domum tuetur.*

*The farmer tills the fields; his wife takes care of the house.*

*Note.*—The Possessive Pronoun is not expressed when the Possessor is the Subject of the Verb, unless it is needed for emphasis.

1. The king's soldiers are taking the city.
2. We see the leader of the enemy.
3. Caesar moved the camp.
4. There he placed a guard.
5. We shall have given many presents.
6. The Sabines held the citadel.
7. They will found a town.
8. He enlisted two new legions.
9. We have conquered treacherous hosts, cowardly enemies.
10. The soldier counts his wounds, the shepherd his sheep.
11. Our legions withstood the onset of the enemy.
12. The speech of the consul had moved the-common-people.

1. We leave the boundaries of our fatherland and the pleasant fields.
2. I was expecting your letters.
3. The consuls sold the booty.
4. My son has sent me to [prep.] you.
5. They raised a huge funeral-pile.
6. Romulus sent ambassadors round the neighbouring tribes.
7. The consul summoned the people to an assembly.
8. The greedy birds pick-up the *scattered* [thrown] seeds.
9. The Romans expect an end of all their toils.
10. We have sent this book to you.
11. You have strong armies.
12. We move our camp, and spread the wings of our sails.

## IV.

## Nominative Case with Copulative Verbs.

- 131 A Substantive joined to the Subject by a Copulative Verb is in the Nominative Case.

Cicero declaratus est consul. Cic.  
*Cicero was declared consul.*

(See also Shorter Primer, 122.)

---

1. The chief of the soldiers is called the general.
  2. Fabius was appointed *master of the horse* [magister equitum].
  3. Greece was the fatherland of poets.
  4. Our friend has been created a judge.
  5. Jupiter was considered the king of all the gods.
  6. We are the Roman consuls.
  7. Thou wilt have been the guardian of the city.
  8. I shall be the herald of victory.
  9. Hannibal had been declared leader.
  10. The Samnites formerly became *your* [to you] friends and allies.
  11. You are the chiefs of the state.
  12. Camillus was hailed (as) father of his country and second founder of the city.
- 

1. The lark is the herald of morning.
2. You will be the leader of the cavalry.
3. The inhabitants of the city of Rome were citizens, or foreigners, slaves.
4. Philosophy is called the mother of all the arts.
5. The remedy of pain is endurance.
6. Diana was the goddess of forests.
7. Jupiter becomes leader of the flock.
8. My father was Antimachus; I am named Lyconides.
9. The youth was proclaimed general.
10. You are Romans, and the bravest men of the Romans.
11. The son of the consul will be elected king.
12. Two brothers had been sent (as) messengers of the Senate.

## V.

## Composite Subject.

- 129** 1. When two or more Nouns are united as the Subject, the Verb and Adjectives are usually in the Plural :

Veneno abs-mpti sunt Hannibal et Philopoemen. Liv.  
*Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.*

2. If the Persons of a Composite Subject are different, the Verb agrees with the first person rather than the second ; with the second rather than the third :

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus. Cic.  
*If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

3. When the Genders are different, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine :

Rex regiaque clas-sis una profecti. Liv.  
*The king and the royal fleet set out together.*

4. If the things expressed are without life, the Adjectives are generally Neuter :

Regna, honores, divitiae, caduca et incerta sunt. Cic.  
*Kingdoms, honours, riches, are frail and fickle things.*

*Note.*—When the persons of a composite subject are different, the first person stands before the second, and the second before the third.

1. A wolf and a lamb had come to [prep.] the stream.
2. The Roman leader and army will conquer the king of the Gauls.
3. This (man) and I pray-to thee.
4. Punishment and fear were-absent.
5. Caius and I have seen the king's horses.
6. Your books and my letters will have been sent.
7. Both my father and I have deserved well of [prep.] the state.
8. Ptolemy and Cleopatra were sovereigns of Egypt.
9. The father and mother are dead.
10. Virtue and vice are opposite (things).

1. Tullus and Antony are declared consuls.
  2. You and I will do this.
  3. Both Balbus and I have raised our hands.
  4. The opportune death of Hamilecar and the boyhood of Hannibal deferred the war.
  5. You and the judge have written many letters.
  6. The new consuls, Caius Fabius and Caius Plantius, declared war.
  7. The son and daughter of the king have been killed.
  8. Lucius and Titia, *brother and sister* [brothers], were set-free.
  9. Riches, honour, and glory were placed *in our sight* [in oculis].
  10. Prosperity, honours, victories are accidental.
- 

## VI.

### Apposition.

- 127**    III. When a Substantive or Pronoun is followed by another Substantive, so that the second explains or describes the first, and has the same relation to the rest of the sentence, the second Noun agrees in Case with the first, and is said to be in Apposition :

Procas rex Albanorum duos filios, Numitorem et  
Amulium, habuit. Lrv.

*Procas, king of the Albans, had two sons, Numitor and  
Amulius.*

*Note.*—The name of a city or town is placed in Apposition: *urbs Roma, the city of Rome.*

---

1. The sacred mount is across the river Anio.
  2. Faustulus, the royal shepherd, finds the boys.
  3. Our soldiers are besieging the city of Gabii.
  4. The robbers led Remus to the king Amulius.
  5. Manilius, a cautious man, entered.
  6. The town of Tarentum had been attacked.
  7. Caius, the judge's son, has killed the leader of the enemy.
  8. By-chance Veii, an ancient city, was near.
  9. You wished to slay me, the consul.
  10. Caesar first sends the youth Brutus, afterwards Fabius the lieutenant.
  11. The walls of the city of Saguntum have fallen.
  12. In the same year two Latin colonies, Pometia and Cora, desert to the enemy.
- 

1. The city of Rome has been taken.
  2. Lucius Fabius, the centurion, ascends the wall.
  3. He worships Phoebus, the director of his way.
  4. Caesar, the Roman general, has conquered the Gauls.
  5. Two very powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed.
  6. The road was between the Jura mountains [sing.] and the river Rhone.
  7. The tribunes of the soldiers leave Appius Claudius, son of the decemvir, an active youth, (as) prefect of the city.
  8. They come to the gates of the renowned city of Athens.
  9. He storms Carteia, a wealthy city, and capital of that race.
  10. *In the works of* [apud] Herodotus, the father of history, are countless legends.
  11. The consul Sulla, a noble and brave man, disagreed with Marius, an illustrious citizen.
  12. The treaty between the cities of Rome and Lavinium was renewed.
-

## VII.

## Relative Pronoun.

- 128      IV. The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; in Case it takes its construction from its own clause:

*Amo te, mater, quae me amas.*  
*I love you, mother, who love me.*

*Arbores multas serit agricola, quarum fructus non adspiciet. Cic.*  
*The farmer plants many trees, of which he will not see the fruit.*

*Note 1.*— *That* is often used in English as a relative.

*Note 2.*— The relative when in the accusative case is sometimes omitted in English, never in Latin: *This is the boy I saw.* *Hic est puer quem vidi.*

- February*  
*23<sup>rd</sup>*  
*Tuesday*  
*1892*
1. The soldiers who were besieging the city have stormed the citadel.
  2. The general who was wounded was Fabius.
  3. I have shut-out those men whom you had sent.
  4. The young man I saw was the king's son.
  5. Not all fields that are cultivated are fruitful.
  6. This is the city of Carthage, which the Romans took.
  7. They quickly came to those fortifications which we have mentioned.
  8. I have always been a friend to-those who have now spoken.
  9. The walls of the temple which was-on-fire have fallen.
  10. I, who am called Flora, was (once) Chloris.
  11. I write this letter to-you who have asked me (my) opinion.

1. There was a grove which a fountain watered.
2. An equestrian statue was decreed, which was placed before the temple of Castor.
3. That is the servant who wrote the letter.
4. We bring the presents that will be sent.
5. Easier [*levis*] becomes the old-age of those who are honoured and loved by youth.
6. What fortune has not given it is not able to take-away.
7. Men readily believe what they wish.
8. The Arar is a river which flows into the Rhone.
9. The legion was sent that was called the seventh.
10. I will send my writings to-you who have always loved these studies.
11. The city which you see was once mistress and queen of the earth.



## VIII.

## Relative Pronoun.

1. The Roman soldiers whom you sent have captured the city of Tarentum.
  2. The war that we are now waging will be long.
  3. They slew the foremost soldiers who had crossed the river.
  4. He sends Commius, whom he had set-up there (as) ruler, (and) whose valour he had proved.
  5. Britain is an island, of which one side is opposite to Gaul.
  6. The city of Gabii, which has been besieged for-a-long-time, will soon be stormed.
  7. He held the command of all the states which had deserted.
  8. *Here* [coram] am I whom you seek, the Trojan Aeneas.
  9. The nearest neighbours are the Ubii, whose state was once large and flourishing.
  10. He is the master whose pupil I was for-a-long-time.
  11. The words of those who speak before they think are vain.
- 

1. I await you whose coming is always pleasant to me.
2. The general was Fabius, to whom that province, which had been conquered, had fallen by-lot.
3. These are the Roman matrons, whose husbands and sons have been killed.
4. I have written three letters which will be sent to my friend.
5. The two legions, which had shortly before been enlisted, *brought up the rear of* [claudio] the whole column.
6. There was a fierce slaughter of those whom terror had driven into the woods.
7. He falls into the snares that he has laid.
8. The moon sends upon the earth the light it has received from the sun.
9. The Athenians used to praise publicly those who had been killed in battle [plur.].
10. Every bull that now bears horns was (once) a calf.
11. He called-together their chiefs, of whom there was a large number in the camp.

## IX.

**Vocative Case.**

**132**      The Vocative is used with or without an Interjection :

O sol pulcher !  
O *beauteous sun* !

Pompei !  
O *Pompeius* !

---

1. Hail, brother ! says he.
  2. We have conquered, you Romans yield.
  3. To arms, citizens !
  4. O queen, we unfortunate Trojans beseech you.
  5. Hear, O Jupiter, hear all ye gods and goddesses.
  6. Look, my son, at the ships which are coming into harbour.
  7. O my country ! O Troy home of the gods !
  8. Do thou, O goddess, instruct thy prophet.
  9. These, O Antony, were always my counsels concerning the state.
  10. O father Phoebus, light of the vast world !
  11. You, my friend, speak rightly and truly.
- 

1. O wretched citizens, what great madness !
2. O Trojan, what thou desirest will be given.
3. Hail, my sister ! Hail, my brother !
4. They sing thy praises, O sacred Terminus !
5. Hear, O chiefs, he says, and learn (what are) your hopes.
6. Hail, ye faithful gods of Troy !
7. Ye have erred, Rullus, you and your colleagues.
8. Hear, O nations, the warnings of the Delian god.
9. A Roman, O soldiers, spoke those words, your consul, your general.
10. O philosophy, guide of life !
11. You, my son, who are present, will hear the words of the prophet.

## X.

## Recapitulatory.

1. You and I have heard the words of the senator.
  2. I am a Roman citizen, says he; they call me Caius Mucius.
  3. This is the book I sent.
  4. For you searched-out, you laid-bare the conspiracy.
  5. Antony, the friend of Cæsar, killed Cicero, the famous orator.
  6. The first consuls controlled all laws.
  7. You and your sister will see many seas, many cities.
  8. I shall return victorious from Asia, O Marcus Fabius.
  9. The boys you saw are not my pupils.
  10. This was the fall of Veii, the wealthiest city of the Etruscan race.
  11. Claudius, whose father was governor of Egypt, will be created consul.
  12. Tarquin and Tullia were driven out of the city.
- 

1. That burden *fits* [deceit] our shoulders.
2. The lieutenant will soon receive the letter I sent yesterday.
3. I call (upon) you, O brave men, you who have shed much blood for the State.
4. Servilius, the consul, bends his course to the city.
5. My friend and I have been appointed judges.
6. The very high sun had now made the shadows small.
7. O thrice and four-times happy youths!
8. The trees of which you have eaten the fruit are mine.
9. You are the man who sold the land.
10. The king and queen have set out *from* [ab] the camp.
11. The ten ambassadors who were sent were chiefs of the state.
12. The fierce lioness follows the wolf, the wolf himself (follows) the kid.

## XI.

**Accusative Case; Factitive Verbs.**

- 134**     Factitive Verbs (verbs of *making, saying, thinking*) have a second Accusative, in agreement with the Object :

Ciceronem consulem populus declaravit. SALL.  
*The people declared Cicero consul.*

---

1. The Roman people appointed Marcus general.
  2. They had made thee praetor.
  3. They call our king a brave man.
  4. He made me, who had been free, a slave.
  5. Your grandfather appointed himself consul
  6. The Romans considered Caius a good soldier.
  7. The whole state declared Cicero consul.
  8. We shall appoint Caesar leader of the army.
  9. Aeneas calls the town Lavinium from the name of his wife.
  10. We make you, Servius Cornelius, guardian of the laws.
  11. Lo! a youth, the son of him whom you formerly made tribune of the soldiers.
  12. They will name thee, Quintus, the *father* [parent] of Asia.
- 

1. Camillus, the dictator, appointed Scipio master of the horse.
2. We call that (country) where we were born our fatherland.
3. They call thee, Laelius, *alone a wise man* [the one wise].
4. All men considered Rome the capital of the world.
5. We have recognised Brutus (as) a good man.
6. I declare your son the instigator of this war.
7. A rich mother made her daughter her heir.
8. Titus Quintius, the regent, elects Lucius Papirius consul.
9. Free Rome called Cicero the father of his country.
10. He named the city Antioch from the name of his father Antiochus.
11. Plato calls pleasure the bait of evils.
12. The Greeks called Mercury the messenger of the gods.

## XII.

## Double Accusative; Cognate Accusative.

- 135** Some Verbs of *teaching, asking, concealing*, *doceo, teach, flagito, demand, rogo, ask, oro, pray, celo, conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing :

*Racilius primum me sententiam rogavit. Cic.*  
*Racilius asked me first my opinion.*

- 137** Many Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative containing the same idea as the Verb :

*Fortuna ludum insolentem ludit. Hor.*  
*Fortune plays an insolent game.*

- 
1. We are teaching these boys the Latin language.
  2. We all ask you for this.
  3. The ape asked the fox for part of his tail.
  4. You demand of me two speeches.
  5. The soldiers demanded pay from the general.
  6. I have concealed from you that which I will now say.
  7. The master will have taught me many (things).
  8. I have dreamed a wonderful dream.
  9. Alexander fought many battles.
  10. Tarquin asked the senators [fathers] their opinion.
- 

1. We teach (to) others those (things) which we know.
2. The son asked his father for a gift.
3. Now I beseech you this one (thing).
4. The stag asked the sheep for a measure of wheat.
5. The general will conceal this disaster from the king.
6. The Achaeans also begged Philip the king for auxiliary-troops.
7. The king's sons had been taught many (things).
8. Go your way.
9. You from a boy have *lived as a slave* [served slavery] in Alis.
10. I have now related all the battles which Caesar fought.

## XIII.

**Dative Case ; Remoter Object with Transitive Verbs.**

- 140**    The Dative is used with Transitive Verbs of *giving, telling, showing, promising*; which take also an Accusative of the Nearer Object :

*Tibi librum sollicito damus aut fesso. Hor.*  
*We give you a book when you are anxious or weary.*

*Saepe tibi meum somnium narraui. Cic.*  
*I have often told you my dream.*

1. I have shown all your letters to my friend.
2. The master will give a book to the industrious boy.
3. A mouse restored the imprisoned lion to the woods.
4. I promise you this, O senators.
5. The father has told these stories to his children.
6. I, the victorious king Romulus, bring to thee these kingly arms.
7. Our fathers built temples to thee, O Mercury.
8. We have seen the soldiers to whom the consul entrusted the letter.
9. He assigns that province to his brother Hasdrubal, an energetic man.
10. The master gives bones to the dog from his own table.
11. I bought the house, and gave the money to the youth.

1. Give this letter to Claudius, who has been elected consul.
2. The senators decreed the province of Italy to both consuls.
3. The soldier told his dream to Caesar, the Roman general.
4. Procas bequeaths to his son Numitor the ancient kingdom of the Silvan race.
5. He gave all the booty to his own soldiery.
6. The Gauls explained the whole matter to Titus the consul.
7. I dedicate to thee, O Pythian Apollo, a tenth part of the spoil.
8. The king's letter has been shown to the consul to whom the whole matter has been entrusted.
9. My Cicero greets you.
10. To him falls the territory from the Arethusa fountain *as far as* [usque ad] the mouth of the great harbour.
11. I render to you (the things) that are yours.



XIV.

Dative Case ; Remoter Object with Intransitive Verbs.

- 141 The Dative is used with Intransitive Verbs of *pleasing, helping, sparing, believing, obeying*, and their opposites :

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Imperio parent. CAES.         | Parce pio generi. VERG.    |
| <i>They obey the command.</i> | <i>Spare a pious race.</i> |

- 142 *Note.*—Delecto, juvo, *delight*, laedo, *hurt*, gubernare, *govern*, rego, *rule*, jubeo, *command*, take an accusative :

|                                |                         |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Multos castra juvant. HOR.     | Animum rege. HOR.       |
| <i>The camp delights many.</i> | <i>Rule the temper.</i> |

Tempero, moderor, *govern, restrain*, take accusative or dative :

Hic moderatur equos quinon moderabitur irae. HOR.  
*This man controls horses who will not restrain his anger.*

*Note.*—Nubo, *marry* (used only of a woman), takes the dative.

1. Our soldiers will spare the enemy whom they have conquered.
2. The oak, of-old, pleased Jupiter, and the myrtle Venus.
3. Believe me, these things are true.
4. He is a good man who injures nobody.
5. You, soldiers, obey your leader.
6. Why do you yield to fortune ?
7. This man rules others, he does not rule himself.
8. These stories please you.
9. The *early* [novus] winter has hurt the leaves.
10. The deceit was-evident to both sides.
11. Those whom you have pleased are few, those whom you have injured are many.

1. I met the captives whom the king had spared.
2. This war will have injured the citizens, not their enemies.
3. My consulship does not please Antony, but it has pleased many.
4. That is evident, says Philip, even to a blind (man).
5. Socrates, the philosopher, seemed to his own pupils the wisest of all (men).
6. Aeneas directs the helm.
7. Go indoors, restrain your tongue.
8. I congratulate you, and the state on account of you.
9. The sister of the Vitellii had married Brutus the consul.
10. The greatest power is to govern oneself.
11. Cato was repairing the war ships in Sicily (and) ordering new ones from-the-states [dat.].

## XV.

**Dative Case ; Remoter Object with Adjectives.**

- 143**      The Dative is used with Adjectives implying *nearness, fitness, likeness, help, hope, trust, obedience, or any opposite idea* :

Quis amior quam frater fratri? SALL.

*Who (is) more friendly than a brother to a brother ?*

Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis. PLIN.

*The horse and the dog are most faithful to man.*

- 
1. Those things were pleasant to me.
  2. The Treviri are the nearest (people) to the river Rhine.
  3. The consul chose a position suitable for the camp.
  4. We will send Caius, a man faithful to the king.
  5. This day was severe to our men.
  6. Great riches are exposed to danger.
  7. The boy is very like his father.
  8. Greece has no deity equal to thee.
  9. Acceptable and pleasant are your letters to me.
  10. The dog guards the house ; the dog also is faithful to its master.

- 
1. The city of Athens is very near the sea.
  2. The ambassador *brought news* [announced things] pleasant to the people.
  3. To good men and citizens my safety was precious.
  4. This will please Marcus, a man most faithful to his friends.
  5. I will return a favour equal to this great service.
  6. The army of the Etruscans will be exposed to very great danger.
  7. This was useless to you, but most useful to me.
  8. The fountain of Mercury is near the gate of the city.
  9. They incite to war a race most hostile to the Roman people.
  10. The minds of all wicked men are hostile and opposed to me.

XVI.

Dative Case; Remoter Object with Compound Verbs.

- 144 The Dative is used with Compound Verbs, Transitive and Intransitive, formed with the following Prepositions :

ad, ante, ab,  
in, inter, de,

sub, super, ob,  
con, post, and prae.

Also with the Adverbs bene, male, satis, and the prefix re-

145

Gigantes bellum dis intulerunt. Cic.

*The giants waged war against the gods.*

His negotiis non interfuit solum sed praefuit. Cic.

*He not only took part in these affairs, but directed them.*

Ceteris satisfacio semper, mihi numquam. Cic.

*I always satisfy others, myself never.*

1. The Tuscan territory adjoins the Roman.
2. Antony was in command of the cavalry.
3. The gate which he had first attacked was taken.
4. The king of the Etruscans met the Roman general.
5. He placed Titus Labienus the lieutenant in charge of the fortification which he had made.
6. O gods and men of this place, aid my unhappy mother.
7. (I) who had been accustomed to rule, now submit to the rule of another.
8. From this feast the *best of boys* [best boy], our Quintus, was absent.
9. Cicero entreated not Caesar only, but also all his friends.
10. It is better to do-good to the bad than to do-ill to the good.
11. I wish you well from my heart.

1. The chief was at-hand in all dangers.
2. I will now answer you.
3. The consul will place Claudius in charge of the legions.
4. I am wretched because I have done him a wrong.
5. Cincius has delivered to me the letter which you had given.
6. Spurius Tarpeius was in command of the Roman citadel.
7. Three hundred of the cavalry of the Romans meet the squadron of cavalry.
8. Vorenus, his foe, comes to his aid and relieves *his sufferings* [him suffering].
9. I return thanks to you who have always done good to me.
10. I wish to satisfy Brutus, an excellent man.
11. Hail good guardian, to whom I have entrusted my son.

c

## XVII.

## Dative of Advantage, Possessor, Purpose.

- 145      The person or thing for whose advantage something is done is in the Dative Case :

Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.    Cíc.  
*We do not wish to be rich for ourselves alone.*

- 146      Dative of the Possessor, with esse :

Est mihi plenus Albani cadus.    Hor.  
*I have a cask full of Alban wine. (lit. there is to me.)*

- 147      Dative of the Result or Purpose of action :

Equitatum auxilio Caesari miserunt.    CAES.  
*They sent the cavalry as a help to Caesar.*

- 
1. Your brother has many books.
  2. He did all these things for your father.
  3. Every soil is the brave man's native land.
  4. For you the field will be ploughed, for you the city will be built.
  5. We were not born for ourselves alone.
  6. I was promoter of peace for Pompey and for the Senate.
  7. The valour of the general will be an example to the soldiers.
  8. On all sides there was leisure for the Romans.
  9. All these books have been given as a present to my son.
  10. Labienus sends up the cohorts as a reinforcement to the cavalry.
  11. We have mellow apples, soft chestnuts, and abundance of *curdled* [pressed] milk.

- 
1. You have moderate riches.
  2. There Dionysius was a help to us.
  3. A good man will always have many friends.
  4. There is a sure reward *even* [et] for faithful silence.
  5. That disaster has always been a reproach to the Romans.
  6. Those who have no riches envy the possessions of others.
  7. I will not be a hindrance to my friends who have often helped me.
  8. You have the kingdoms of Daunus your father; you have many towns taken by force.
  9. Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry which the Haedui had sent as a help to Caesar.
  10. The famous Athens, said he, is my country.
  11. We have three sons and two daughters.

## XVIII.

## Imperative.

**346** The Imperative is the Mood of positive command or direct request :

I, sequere Italiam. VERG.  
Go, seek Italy.

Pergite, adulescentes. CIC.  
Proceed, O youths.

- 
1. Be present all ye gods and goddesses, preserve this city.
  2. Depart ye far hence.
  3. You Caius go away, let the rest remain.
  4. Farewell ; manage the business well.
  5. Do ye attend to other wars ; give the Fabii as enemies to the Veientes.
  6. Take your arms, soldiers : your general has been killed.
  7. Sailors, weigh anchor.
  8. O companions, fortune herself shows the way of safety ; let us follow.
  9. Romans, elect a king.
  10. Do good to your friends, spare your enemies.
  11. Here where the boughs make a pleasant shade [plur.], here, O Maeris, let us sing.
  12. Soldier, follow me ; obey your leader.
- 

1. Do ye too, O ants, spare the scattered seeds.
2. Let us yield to Phoebus and let us follow better things.
3. Go, bring torches, give weapons, urge-on your oars.
4. Boy, give me a stone, he exclaims.
5. Let us go hence to the city of Romulus where greater spoil awaits you.
6. Attend to what I have commanded and go away.
7. Speak boldly.
8. Take arms *at daybreak* [at first light], follow me to battle.
9. Let others seek wealth ; do ye aim at glory.
10. Go, lictor, bind his hands.
11. Bring help, citizens ; the enemy is at hand.
12. Go, my bird, said Phoebus, and bring clear water from living springs.

## XIX.

## Negative Adverbs.

228 Negative Adverbs are **non**, **haud**, **ne** :

**Non**, *not*, is simply negative :

Nives in alto mari non cadunt. PLIN.

*No snow falls on the high seas.*

**Haud**, *not*, is often used with Adjectives and other Adverbs :

Res haud dubia.

*No doubtful matter.*

Haud aliter.

*Not otherwise.*

*Note.*—From these others are formed, as **numquam**, *never*, **nusquam**, *nowhere*, **nondum**, *not yet*, **haudquaquam**, *not at all*. **Ne** with **quidem** expresses *not even*, and the words on which stress is laid come between.

1. The bravest soldiers do not always conquer the enemy.
2. No other Roman battle was fiercer.
3. The speech of Hanno did not move many (men).
4. The farmer has not yet ploughed the fields.
5. The Roman soldiers had not taken the city of Veii.
6. Nowhere was the embassy willingly listened to.
7. Hannibal was already not far from thence.
8. You have never told me this story before.
9. Those things are not always what they seem.
10. I shall soon go to the city of Tarentum, which I have not yet seen.
11. Ascanius, the son of Aeneas, was not yet of ripe age [maturus] for government.
12. The combat was not at all equal for the Carthaginians.

1. (He) who has not ploughed the fields will not reap corn.
2. I will not answer, even to you.
3. This place is not at all suitable for the camp.
4. I am not your master, but your slave.
5. The leader did not (desert) his soldier, the soldier did not desert his leader.
6. You have not neglected even the least things.
7. That did not at all please Fabius.
8. Our army will not easily conquer the enemy's cavalry.
9. Never, says he, does the wise (man) get angry.
10. To a good general chance is of no great importance.
11. The king of the Britons had not many soldiers.
12. I have planted a tree the fruit of which I shall never behold.

## XX.

## Prohibitions and Negatives.

**Ne** is used for prohibitions with the second person of the Perfect Conjunctive: **ne transieris Hiberum** (Liv.), *do not cross the Ebro*.

*Note.*—In the poets the Second Person of the Imperative is used.

Prohibitions are also expressed by **noli, nolite** with the Infinitive:

**Nolite id velle quod fieri non potest.** Cic.  
*Do not wish what cannot be.*

*Note.*—For prohibitions in the first and third persons, **ne** with Present Conjunctive is used: **ne timeamus**, *let us not fear*; **ne timeant**, *let them not fear*.

1. You have not sent the letter which you have written.
2. Do not irritate the wasps.
3. Thou too fail not in doubtful fortunes, O goddess mother [divine parent].
4. He knows not (how) to speak who knows not (how) to be silent.
5. Be not mindful of injuries.
6. Do not cut down these trees.
7. They now affirm what they then denied.
8. Let us not now obey the enemy whom we have often conquered.
9. Do not give me that, I beg you, says he.
10. Friends, let us not fear the dangers of battle.
11. Do not do this.
12. May the frosts not harm you!

1. One cannot be good to others and bad to oneself.
2. Do not dispute.
3. The affair has come to his ears, I do not know how.
4. Do not place Caius in command of the legions.
5. Soldiers, do not fly.
6. Shun not (our) hospitality, nor ignore (us) Latins the race of Saturn.
7. I have heard nothing of my son.
8. Be not too much frightened, the anger of cruel Jove is turned (away).
9. Strive not after what is not given to you.
10. Let there be no delay, send the willing-one.
11. Do not believe this wicked man, who has told so many lies.
12. He is not my father, and I never heard his name before this day.

## Italian - Italici

## XXI.

## Recapitulatory.

1. Go hence, do not return before the eighth day.
2. The boys chose Horatius leader of their games.
3. What you have done well, you have done for yourself, not for me.
4. The Italian farmers prefer the vine and the olive to all other trees.
5. The death of Cicero was a great grief [*S.P.* 147] to all good citizens.
6. We have a field which feeds many cows and sheep.
7. All these rewards have been given to Caesar's lieutenants.
8. Labienus, who was in command of the cavalry, did not spare the Gauls.
9. I am here who did it; turn your steel *against* [*in, acc.*] me.
10. He passed (over) the son of his brother, (and) made you, whom he had never seen, his heir.
11. It is easy to say (witty) sayings against you and yours.
12. Two daughters were married, the elder to Sulpicius, the younger to Licinius Stolo.

- 
1. I return (as) an enemy to those who have injured me.
  2. Not even you took part in all these affairs.
  3. He leaves Fabius his lieutenant with two legions as a guard to the camp.
  4. They snatch the feathers from that impudent bird.
  5. Do not conceal from the king the death of his son.
  6. That which pleases you will also please me.
  7. In my consulship I *never* [nothing] commanded, but on the contrary obeyed the senators and all good men.
  8. The olive is very pleasant to us on account of its fruit.
  9. The muses have made me, too, a poet; I, too, *can sing* [have songs].
  10. You, Antony, and all your friends are exposed to great dangers.
  11. The Romans had chosen Marcus Furius, the greatest general of all, as leader.
  12. Caesar trusted me, whom he held most dear, and the province of Sicily to your *honour* [*fides*].



## XXII.

## Single Questions.

## 234 Single Questions are asked by:

nonnē, expecting the answer *yes*.

num " " " *no*.

-nē, expecting either answer.

an, expressing surprise and expecting answer *no*.

Canis nonne similis lupo est? Cic.

*Is not a dog like a wolf?*

Num negare audes? Cic.

*Do you venture to deny?*

Potes ne dicere? Cic.

*Can you say?*

- 
1. What will you do? Will you not attack the city?
  2. Was Romulus a king of barbarians, Scipio?
  3. *Can it be that* [An] these things are true?
  4. Do you so believe?
  5. Has the king written a letter to the senate?
  6. Are we not unfortunate?
  7. Is your father living? We left him alive when we departed thence.
  8. Shall a few barbarians conquer the whole Roman army?
  9. Have not his companions, have not his old friends, failed him?
  10. Does he say that it is his own? He does not say (so).
  11. What are you [pl.] doing? Has our coming interrupted your conversation?
- 

1. Have you seen the king's horses?
2. Were you free? I was.
3. What? did they not give way then?
4. Has he groaned at our weeping? Has he turned his eyes?
5. But say, I pray, are you my father? I am, my son.
6. Did not Caesar conquer the Gauls?
7. Has Cicero many friends?
8. Did you (really) write those letters?
9. Did I seem to you *too proud* [prouder]?
10. Has not the general sent two legions as a reinforcement to the army?
11. Is this Philto who has come? It is he himself.

## XXIII.

**Alternative Questions and Interrogative Pronouns.****235**      Alternative Questions are most often asked by :

|       |   |   |   |   |   |          |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| utrum | . | . | . | . | . | an (or). |
| -nē   | . | . | . | . | . | an (or). |

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est? Crc.  
*Is that your fault or ours?*

Romanē venio, an hic maneo, an Arpinum fugio? Crc.  
*Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*

*Note.*—Single questions are also asked by many Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, as *quis, qui, qualis, quantus, quot, cur, quare, ubi, unde.*

- 
1. Has the farmer reaped his corn or not?
  2. Are you a slave or a free man?
  3. Are you the opponents of the soldiers, or do you plead their cause?
  4. Who has told these stories to the boys?
  5. Alas, says he, what land (or) what ocean can now receive me?
  6. Of what kind is that speech?
  7. Where is that gold? In a chest at my house.
  8. Do you believe him or me?
  9. Why am I called queen and chief of goddesses?
  10. Did our soldiers conquer, or were they conquered?
  11. What other race of men is there in that province? None.
  12. Are you ignorant of the enemy or of yourselves, or of the fortune of each people?

- 
1. Whence did the Gauls come, whither did they go away?
  2. Where are the sons and daughters of the king?
  3. What kind of man was your kinsman?
  4. Is it he whom I seek or not?
  5. Is dominion allotted to you [plur.], or equal liberty to all?
  6. How was the city taken? By force or craft?
  7. To whom did you give the soldier's sword?
  8. What do you now wish to give him? Nothing, father.
  9. Wherefore do the ancient temples of the gods fall?
  10. Of what kind is that work? for what is it used? when? why? in what manner?
  11. When will the city of Gabii be stormed?
  12. Did you (desert) Domitius or did Domitius desert you?

XXIV.

**Ablative Case : Separation.**

- 149** The Ablative of Separation is used with Verbs meaning to *remove, release, deprive, want*; with Adjectives such as *liber, free*; also the Adverb *procul, far from*:

Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriā pepulit. **NEP.**  
*The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country.*

1. The king will free the prisoners from their chains.
2. He had been driven by Jupiter from the celestial kingdoms.
3. Caius, a very brave man, lacks wisdom.
4. The wall was stripped of defenders.
5. *Dismiss* [loosen] fear from your hearts, O Trojans, shut-out cares.
6. With a swift bound he frees himself from the snare.
7. The soldiers have been relieved of the heavy burden of their arms.
8. Scipio encamped not far from the city.
9. And now the cavalry had gone out from the open gates.
10. Depart hence, free from all fear; preserve both yourself and the army.
11. Clodius endeavoured to drive from their possessions, not only the Etruscans, but (also) our judge, Varius.

1. The king's daughters were driven from the city.
2. The violence of the wind stripped the trees of their leaves.
3. You will free me from great fear.
4. 'I pray you [*quaeso*], spare me, who clear your house from troublesome mice,' says (the cat).
5. A foolish plan lacks (good) effect.
6. The attack of our legions drove the enemy from their camp.
7. Collatinus abdicated the consulship, (and) withdrew from the citizenship.
8. He lifted to the stars his *hands* [*palma*] freed from chains.
9. The enemy surrendered the walls void of defenders.
10. Those who are endowed with virtue are always rich; they lack nothing.
11. The parents and little children of the soldiers were driven from their *homes* [*sedes*].

## XXV.

**Ablative Case: Comparison.****150 The Ablative of Comparison (expressing Difference) is used with Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs:**

*Nihil est amabilius virtute. CIC.*

*Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

*Note.* — This construction is equivalent to *quam, than*, with the Nominative or Accusative. 'Virtute' equals 'quam virtus.' With the other cases *quam* must be used for comparison:

*Nihilo amior est Phaedriae quam Antipho. TER.*

*He is in no degree more friendly to Phaedria than to Antipho.*

- 
1. Have you seen a building higher than the temple of Diana?
  2. A general is of more service than an orator.
  3. The city of Rome is larger than Athens.
  4. Light is swifter than sound.
  5. This (king) was not only unlike the *former* [proximus] king, but bolder even than Romulus.
  6. All your designs are clearer to us than daylight.
  7. Caesar now had greater forces than those which his lieutenant commanded.
  8. More cities are taken by treachery than by force.
  9. What is better than goodness and beneficence?
  10. He was more popular with the multitude than with the senators.
  11. This land is dearer to me than any other soil.
  12. Why are you angry with me? Because you were more faithful to him than to me.

- 
1. Our chains are heavier than yours.
  2. Thus Saturn is less than Jupiter.
  3. Is the boy wiser than his father?
  4. Some remedies are *worse* [more severe] than the dangers themselves.
  5. What is more useful than knowledge of these things?
  6. Caius was braver than the rest of the soldiers.
  7. You are better to me than I am to myself.
  8. The result of this battle seemed more serious to the Romans than to their allies.
  9. He flies more swift than the east wind and *makes for* [seeks] the cave.
  10. To no one is this victory more pleasing than to me.
  11. Have you seen any soldiers braver than ours?
  12. May that day be late, later than our age!

XXVI.

**Ablative Case: Association, Quality, Respect, Manner.**

- 151** The Ablative of Association is used with Verbs and Adjectives denoting *plenty, fulness, possession*: *abundo, abound, dono, present, praeditus, endowed with*:

Villa abundat porco, gallina, lacte, caseo, melle. Crc.  
*The farm abounds in pork, poultry, milk, cheese, honey.*

- 152** The Ablative of Quality is used with an Adjective in agreement:

Senex promissā barbā, horrenti capillo. PLIN. MIN.  
*An old man with long beard and rough hair.*

- 153** Ablative of Respect:

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Pauci numero.         | Natione Medus.          |
| <i>Few in number.</i> | <i>By birth a Mede.</i> |

- 154** The Ablative of the Manner in which something happens or is done has an Adjective in agreement with it; or it follows the Preposition *cum, with*:

Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede. Ov.  
*Presently bent old age will come with silent foot.*

Magnā cum curā atque diligentia scripsit. Crc.  
*He wrote with great care and attention.*

1. My friend is rich in lands and money.
2. The wolf flees the hunter with swift foot.
3. The eyes of the serpent gleam with fire, all its body swells with poison.
4. The tribune killed the chief of the Gauls, a man endowed with great strength.
5. Flattering in words, he is faithless at heart.
6. Here Dido founded a vast temple for Juno, rich in gifts.
7. The bisons are in size little *less than* [below] elephants, with the appearance and colour and shape of a bull.

8. The general is a boy in age, a man in wisdom.
  9. All Gallic walls are of this pattern.
  10. His companion follows with quiet and tranquil step.
  11. Neither in (respect of) place nor number was it an equal contest for the Romans.
  12. Praises were added, in which the soldiers take no less pleasure than in the reward.
- 

1. I will give to you forthwith a bag full of meal.
  2. Zeno was a man of the highest intelligence.
  3. The army returned to the city laden with booty.
  4. All spoke in this manner.
  5. Our cavalry reached the city with great speed.
  6. The Carthaginian *was rich* [abounded] in a multitude of men.
  7. Messius, a man more noble by deeds than by race, speaks with a loud voice.
  8. All these things were done with immense speed.
  9. The king sent soldiers few in number (but) distinguished for courage.
  10. By the consent of all who survived, they had sent ambassadors to Cæsar.
  11. Then father Anchises filled a great bowl with wine.
  12. Phoebus, clothed in a purple robe, was sitting on a throne glittering with bright emeralds.
- 

## XXVII.

### **Ablative Absolute.**

- 155**      The Ablative Absolute is a phrase consisting of a Noun in the Ablative Case and a Participle, or another Noun, in agreement with it: it is called Absolute because in construction it is independent of the rest of the Sentence:

Regibus exactis consules creati sunt. Lrv.  
*Kings having been abolished, consuls were elected.*

Nil desperandum Teucro duce. Hor.  
*There must be no despair, Teucer being leader.*

1. Scipio, having sent-forward the cavalry, follows after with all his forces.
2. When they had weighed anchor, they all left Utica.
3. The number of the ships having been increased, Brutus hastens thither.
4. With me for your leader you will be safe.
5. Our men, having raised a shout, fling their javelins swiftly at the enemy.
6. While Cicero was speaking, the rest were silent.
7. Having pitched his camp on the bank, he crossed the river by a ford.
8. When the letter had been written, the messenger returned.
9. The alliance being concluded, they take up arms.
10. This was done *in sight of the general* [the general looking-on].
11. To-morrow at sunrise return to the battle.
12. When these things were known, one of the two legions raised the standards, he himself standing by.

1. Having ascertained these things, he provides for the supply of corn, and chooses a place suitable for the camp.
2. With the dogs for your guards, you will never fear the attacks of wolves.
3. The leader of the enemy having been killed, the city is taken at the first assault.
4. Having drawn his sword, he pierces the girl.
5. When these things were found out, all the citizens were frightened.
6. That business having been quickly settled, he led back the legions into winter-quarters.
7. While the king is absent we shall do nothing.
8. His brother having been driven-out, Amulius reigns.
9. Having found out the *great number* [multitud.] of the enemy, the Gauls fled.
10. Solon and Pisistratus flourished in the reign of Servius Tullius.
11. Romulus having called the people into council, gave laws.
12. When he was aware of their plan, Caesar led the army to the river Thames *in* [into] the boundaries of Cassibelaunus.

## XXVIII.

## Ablative of the Agent.

**156** The Agent by whom something is done is in the Ablative with the preposition *a, ab*, after a Passive Verb.

---

1. The city of Rome was set on fire by the Gauls.
  2. Carthage had been taken by the Romans.
  3. The ranks were thrown into confusion by the cavalry of the allies.
  4. Were not these letters written by Cicero?
  5. The death of Crassus was mourned by many.
  6. He was led into the citadel by the augur.
  7. He is praised by these (men); he is blamed by those.
  8. Marcus, a very brave soldier, was presented with a golden crown by the consul.
  9. Thanks were given to Camillus both by the enemy and by the citizens.
  10. A great part were swept away by the river; some, carried-away by the current to the enemy, were trampled on by the elephants.
- 
1. Remus was killed by the angry Romulus.
  2. The leader praised the soldiers by whom the town was stormed.
  3. He is called king by his own (subjects).
  4. I saw the traveller by whom the story was told.
  5. All these things were done in my absence by my friends.
  6. Were the Gauls conquered by Caesar or by Antony?
  7. Short life has been given to us by nature, but everlasting memory of a life well *spent* [rendered].
  8. Terentius Varro returned to the army with a spirit unsubdued by the citizens or by the enemy.
  9. When the ranks had been thrown into confusion by the cavalry, the enemy were routed by the legions.
  10. The ambassador having been sent, they take up arms, instigated by Scipio, and invade the province of the Carthaginians with a strong army.



XXIX.

**Ablative Case : Instrument, Cause.**

- 157** The Instrument by means of which something is done is in the Ablative Case without a Preposition :

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. VERG.*  
*These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.*

- 158** The Ablative of the Cause is used with Adjectives, Passive Participles, and Verbs :

*Oderunt peccare mali formidine poenae. HOR.*  
*The bad hate to sin through fear of punishment.*

- 
1. The boy killed the bird with a stone.
  2. Valour perishes by deceit.
  3. The general of the enemy was killed with a sword by our general.
  4. The Roman soldiers fled through fear of the elephants.
  5. I am not moved by your words.
  6. The walls were being struck with battering-rams, and many parts had been shaken.
  7. The ship was wrecked through the folly of the steersman.
  8. Cacus dragged the oxen into the cave by their tails.
  9. Having weighed anchor, the fleet set sail with a favourable wind.
  10. The horses trembled, terrified by the discordant cries.
  11. My punishment becomes far heavier by delay.
  12. Arbocala was defended for a long time by the valour and the number of the townsmen.

- 
1. He struck the pig with a flint stone.
  2. The farmer has planted these trees with his own hands.
  3. We learn by example [pl.].
  4. Our men, having dropped their javelins, fought hand-to-hand with swords.
  5. I strengthened my house with greater defences.
  6. Are these the weapons with which you will defend the city?
  7. Lausus falls by his uncle's sword.
  8. An ancient wood was standing, disturbed by no axe.
  9. This is the sword with which the general was wounded.
  10. Defend your country, parents, children, wives, with your arms ; drive away the enemy with the sword.
  11. He was almost cut off there, not by open fighting, but by his own (particular) arts, treachery and ambuscade.
  12. 'Cleave the water with your oars' [sing.], said the mariner.

## XXX.

**Ablative Case with Deponent Verbs.**

- 159**    The Deponent Verbs *fungor*, *perform*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *vescor*, *feed on*, *utor*, *use*, *potior*, *possess oneself of*, take an Ablative :

*Numidae ferina carne vescebantur.*    *SAL.*

*The Numidians used to feed on the flesh of wild animals.*

- 160**    The Adjectives *dignus*, *worthy*, *indignus*, *unworthy*, and the Transitive Verb *dignor*, *deem worthy*, also *contentus*, *contented*, and *fretus*, *relying on*, take an Ablative :

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.*    *HOR.*

*A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.*

- 
1. Having killed his father-in-law, Tarquinius gained possession of the kingdom.
  2. I enjoy perpetual spring.
  3. You are worthy of praise who did this.
  4. The ancients fed on pure milk and herbs.
  5. Relying on his courage and strength, he attacked the leader of the enemy hand-to-hand.
  6. All [fem.] are contented with their special gifts.
  7. Another Gaul performed the same office.
  8. You enjoy all these things, who know not (how) to fear.
  9. They employ the Druids as ministers for those sacrifices.
  10. We all enjoy the fruits of victory.
- 

1. He who is contented with few things, is worthy of many.
2. The suppliant Juno used these words.
3. Horses feed on grass, dogs on flesh.
4. Cæsar, relying on the support of the allies, joined battle.
5. He performs the office neither of a good citizen, nor of a good man.
6. These things are worthy of the valour of your soldiers, these (are worthy) of the Roman name.
7. I *do not work at all* [work nothing], and I enjoy the best things.
8. Will not this man have performed his duty to his king and to the State?
9. Our soldiers gained possession of the baggage and the camp.
10. Relying on these feelings, Aeneas led forth his forces into battle.

XXXI.

**Ablative of Measure of Difference.**

**161** An Ablative of the Measure of Difference is joined with Comparatives and Superlatives, and, rarely, with Verbs.

*Note.*—Especially the Ablatives aliquanto, *by somewhat*; dimidio, *by half*; multo, *by much*; paullo, *by little*; nihilo, *by nothing, not at all*; eo . . . quo, tanto . . . quanto, *by as much . . . by so much, the more . . . the more.*

Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia.  
*Ireland is smaller by half than Britain.*

Sept. 14. 92

1. The porch will cost more by half.
  2. Peace was no safer for him than war.
  3. This boy is *a head shorter* [less by a head] than his brother.
  4. Caesar led his army into winter quarters a little earlier than the time of year required.
  5. This reward greatly exceeds what he has deserved.
  6. This island is much greater than Sicily.
  7. A few days afterwards he returned to the army of his own accord.
  8. The pain is as much heavier as the fault is greater.
  9. *In proportion as* [quantum] they had advanced with the work, so much further they were from the water.
  10. The pass is a little more than a mile, *as the crow flies* [by straight journey], from Utica.
- 
1. Italy is many miles longer than Britain.
  2. The more severe and violent the attack became, the more frequent letters and messengers were sent to Cæsar.
  3. He indeed will be justly placed among the ancients who is younger by a short month, or even by one whole year.
  4. The forces of the allies arrived a little after (those) of the Romans.
  5. I will not hesitate to warn you, a friendly man, and younger by some years (than myself).
  6. Somewhat more (men) had been killed than taken prisoners.
  7. The tribune a year later was Crassus.
  8. The leader recalled the soldiers, who had advanced a little further.
  9. Brutus was much inferior in number of ships.
  10. Deeds are much more difficult than words.

*subjungo, ere, xi, him. to yoke*  
*seductio = discord*

## XXXII.

**Recapitulatory.**

1. He who is free from [lacks] fault is worthy of the highest praise.
2. Was not this man your friend? He was and is.
3. Having yoked the oxen to the plough, the farmer will till the fields.
4. On the following night the Volsci, relying on the *dissensions of the Romans* [Roman discord], attack the camp.
5. How great is the number of the senators who were killed yesterday?
6. The forces of the enemy were much greater than ours, yet they were dispersed and routed.
7. Whose cause are you pleading? For whom have you undertaken so great a labour?
8. You and I will go with the steward and see the estate I have bought.
9. Fear kept the rest away, not only from the curia, but also from the forum.
10. Why did you not hold those assemblies?
11. Shame, however, kept with Horatius two men, Lartius and Herminius, both distinguished in race and in deeds.
12. Have you ever seen a friend more faithful than this (one)?
13. Scipio, having been *unhorsed* [thrown down from his horse], was killed by a Gaul with a spear.

1. A fool does not know how to use anything, but wants everything.
2. Do not believe him worthy of such honour.
3. For who (was) more hostile to anyone than Caesar to this man?
4. A shout is raised from the citadel by the Tuscians, it is received with a somewhat greater (shout) by the Romans.
5. How long, O Catiline, will you abuse our patience?
6. The tribunes were contented with that, and the people were contented.
7. Unconquered in war, I have in (time of) peace been driven out of my country by ungrateful citizens.
8. Hallo! you boys, what are you doing there? Why are you breaking-into that house?
9. The enemy having been routed, more of them were killed than taken prisoners.
10. That censor was (a man) of the greatest modesty and dignity, this tribune (a man) of rare wickedness and insolence.
11. Whom will Cicero send? When will he come himself? Why is he not yet present?
12. Nothing is more hateful than dishonour; nothing more shameful than slavery.
13. In the absence of the consuls a meeting of the senate [senatus] was held by the prefect of the city.

XXXIII.

Ablative of Price, Genitive of Value.

- 162** The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives of *buying* and *selling*:

Vendidit hic auro patriam. VERG.  
*This man sold his country for gold.*

- 172** Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, plurimi, minimi, nihili, are used with Verbs of *valuing* and *weighing*:

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit. CIC.  
*Virtue accounts pleasure of very little value.*

*Note.*—The Genitives tanti . . . quanti, pluris, minoris, are also used with Verbs of *buying* and *selling*, but not to express definite price.

Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit. CIC.  
*He bought the gardens for as much as Pythius wished.*

1. Caius bought these fields for three talents.
  2. All these things are highly valued by the barbarians.
  3. That delay cost him dear, for within a few days he lost his son.
  4. Riches are of more account now than formerly, while the nation was poor, while Rome was new.
  5. Shall you sell your lands for more than you bought them for?
  6. No one in these parts has a better field, or one of more value.
  7. The corn was bought for as much as he valued it at.
  8. Despise pleasures; pleasure bought by pain harms.
  9. Achilles sold the lifeless body of Hector for gold.
  10. The sailors brought back gems and silver vessels of great value.
- 
1. Silver is not valued as highly as gold.
  2. Are you that man's slave? For how much did he buy you?
  3. The general will sell his horses for much gold.
  4. He bought the field *for half as much again as* [more dearly by half than] he valued it at.
  5. Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.
  6. My bravery costs me not a little, says the Tuscan leader.
  7. I hold such things of very small worth.
  8. I stole your son from you and sold him for six minae.
  9. The farmer has sold his oxen for thirty coins.
  10. I bought myself an enemy for a talent (and) sold a friend.

## XXXIV.

**Genitive Case, Definitive, Attributive.**

- 165**     The Genitive of Definition follows the Noun on which it depends :

*Vox voluptatis.*  
*The word pleasure.*

*Nomen regis.*  
*The name of king.*

- 166**     The Attributive Genitive defines the noun on which it depends like an Adjective :

*Lux solis.*  
*The light of the sun.*

*Anni labor.*  
*A year's toil.*

- 168**     Verbs and Adjectives of *accusing, condemning, convicting, or acquitting* take a Genitive of the fault or crime :

*Alter latrocinii reus, alter caedis convictus est. Cic.*  
*The one was accused of robbery, the other was convicted of murder.*

1. The Romans always hated the name of king.
2. A shout of men arises, and a noise of trumpets.
3. Diana was the goddess of forests.
4. The city of Athens is much smaller than Rome.
5. The course of life is short, (that) of glory (is) everlasting.
6. The sun's radiance is brighter than (that) of any fire.
7. A wolf accused a fox on a charge of theft.
8. The earth is the common mother of all mortals.
9. The judge acquitted him of wrong-doing.
10. The crowd with great clamour implore the help, now of the consuls, now of the senators.
11. He *beheaded* [struck with an axe] more than seventy (who were) condemned for treason.
12. The waves of the ocean are higher than (those) of our sea.

1. Hercules at length completed his twelve years' labour.
2. The light of the sun is brighter than (that) of the moon.
3. The virtue of parents is a great dowry.
4. The consul accused the tribune of treachery.
5. The name of friend is common, but the faithfulness is rare.
6. This farmer is tilling a field of five acres.
7. Themistocles was condemned for treason *in his absence* [absent].
8. Forthwith a host of robbers and shepherds flees thither.
9. The slave was put on his trial for murder and condemned to death.
10. Do you prefer winter's cold to summer's heat ?
11. The army, wearied by the night march, is refreshed with one day's rest.
12. You have not been acquitted of dishonesty, but they have been condemned for murder.

XXXV.

Genitive Case, Possessive, Quality, Author.

170 Possessive Genitive:

Regis copiae. Cic. Contempsit Catilinae gladios. Cic.  
*The king's forces. I have braved the swords of Catiline.*

171 The Genitive of Quality has an Adjective in agreement:

Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris. Juv.  
*A boy of noble countenance and noble modesty.*

167 The Genitive of the Author:

Ea statua dicebatur esse Myronis. Cic.  
*That statue was said to be Myro's.*

*Note.*—The Possessive Pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are used as Adjectives: *meus liber, my book.*

1. My son (was) accused on a capital charge, (but) was acquitted through the eloquence of Hortensius.
2. The statues of Polycletus are quite perfect.
3. Having set out at midnight in silence, he reached the enemy's camp in the morning.
4. Caius Volusenus, the tribune of the soldiers, a man of great wisdom and valour, goes to meet Galba.
5. 'The kingdom is yours, Servius,' she says, 'if you are a man, not theirs who have done a very bad deed.'
6. They could not withstand the attack of our victorious soldiers.
7. They had placed stones of great weight in the wall.
8. The possessions of individuals are the riches of the state.
9. They feared punishment from the Gauls, whose lands they had harried.
10. The temple of Jupiter on the Capitol had not yet been dedicated.
11. The victory of the enemy was not doubtful.

1. The soldiers whose general was killed have returned to the camp.
2. The rest having been quieted by fear or by money, Hannibal had now come into the territory of the Volsci, a powerful race.
3. The Nervii were men of great valour.
4. *First* [ante], however, approach the infernal abodes of Dis.
5. It is a country of many cities and mountains.
6. There was a small marsh between the enemy's army and ours.
7. The Helvetii had come into the borders of the Haedui, and were laying-waste their lands.
8. Thy tigers carried thee, O father Bacchus, drawing the yoke with stubborn neck.
9. Their strength is great and (their) speed great.
10. The books of Xenophon are very useful *for* [ad] many things.
11. *There is need* [opus est] of magistrates, without whose caution and care the state cannot *exist* [be].

## XXXVI.

**Genitive Case, Partitive.**

**173**      The Genitive of a Noun which is distributed into parts is called a Partitive Genitive.

*Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit. Eutr.*

*Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.*

*Multae harum arborum mea manu sunt satae. Cic.*

*Many of these trees were planted by my hand.*

*Note.*—Any word denoting quantity may be used with the Genitive of the whole in which such quantity is contained.

- 
1. Many of the enemy were killed, some were driven into the woods.
  2. Ten thousand men chosen out of all the forces are sent into the town.
  3. Certain of my slaves are worthy of the highest praise.
  4. The Indus is the greatest of all rivers.
  5. Did three of you take part in that battle or four?
  6. His three sons, having gone out to meet him, receive him, then other friends, then the greater part of the senators.
  7. They carry the first-fruits of the crops and other gifts to the temple.
  8. There was more praise for the sword than for the bent plough.
  9. Our general has lost a great part of his army.
  10. Many of these difficulties *I reckon of no account* [*nihili facio*].
- 
1. Of our ships, some were sunk, others cast *ashore* [on to the shore].
  2. He assigned part of the cavalry to Labienus, part he left to himself.
  3. With three battering-rams he shattered some of the wall.
  4. Your friend sold one of these horses for sixty golden coins.
  5. Meanwhile the king came up to him with a great number of his own horsemen.
  6. The race of the Suevi is by-far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans.
  7. There is often more good in one than in a crowd.
  8. Divitiacus, the most powerful king of all Gaul, had gained the dominion of a great part of these countries.
  9. Of my (two) sons, the one is a soldier, the other a sailor.
  10. Many of those trees were uprooted by the wind.



## XXXVII.

## Genitive Case, Objective.

**174** *Note.*—The terms Subjective and Objective Genitive are used to express different relations of the Genitive to the Noun on which it depends. Thus *amor patris*, *the love of a father*, may mean either ‘the love felt *by* a father’ (where *patris* is a Subjective Genitive), or ‘the love felt *for* a father’ (where *patris* is an Objective Genitive).

**175** An Objective Genitive is used with Verbal Substantives, Adjectives, and Participles which have the meaning of *love, desire, hope, fear, care, knowledge, skill, power*

*Erat insitus menti cognitionis amor.* CIC.

*Love of knowledge had been implanted in the mind.*

*Avida est periculi virtus.* SEN.

*Valour is greedy of danger.*

*Quis famulus amantior domini quam canis?* COL.

*What servant is fonder of his master than the dog is?*

*Note.*—*Mei*, of me; *tui*, of thee; *sui*, of him, her, them; *nostri*, of us; *vestri*, of you, are Objective Genitives.

1. Many remained in the city through fear of the enemy.
2. He had been drawn by the love of his native soil.
3. A crowd from the neighbouring tribes fled thither, all eager for novelty.
4. Sextus Baculus, of whom we have made mention in *earlier* [*superior*] battles, was left sick in the garrison.
5. While he guards the gold, heedless of food, he is consumed by hunger.
6. The Gauls, men unaccustomed to toil, were disturbed in their minds.
7. The care of the affairs of others is hard.
8. Desire of booty roused the spirits of the soldiers.
9. The consul is greedier of money than of glory.
10. Cæsar had no care for these things.
11. You have sent to the armies a youth burning with the desire of sovereignty.
12. You, Romans, have always been desirous of glory, eager for praise.

1. Not being ignorant [fem.] of ill, I learn to help the unfortunate.
  2. P. Considius, who was considered most experienced in military matters, is sent forward with the scouts.
  3. First grew the desire of money, then of power.
  4. His father, a man *filled with love* [most loving] of his country, of the highest wisdom, of rare constancy, took part in all affairs.
  5. The Gauls ran to the plunder, of which that nation is most greedy.
  6. The fear of war is itself worse than war.
  7. My friend is very fond of his children.
  8. The love of his native land will conquer, and the boundless desire of praise.
  9. A beardless youth, his guardian being at length removed, rejoices in horses and dogs, prodigal of money.
  10. The Romans conquered by artifice and the science of assault, in which thing the Gauls were unskilled.
  11. Who is more desirous of punishment than of praise?
  12. By nature we are most tenacious of those things which we have learnt in *early* [rudis] years.
- 

## XXXVIII.

**Genitive Case with Verbs of Remembering, Forgetting  
Pitying.**

- 176**      Most Verbs of *remembering, forgetting, reminding*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, *obliscor*, usually take the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative. *Recordor* almost always takes the Accusative, rarely the Genitive:

*Animus meminit praeteritorum.*      *Cic.*

*The mind remembers past things.*

*Nam modo vos animo dulces reminiscor, amici.*      *Or.*

*For now I remember you, O friends, dear to my soul.*

**177** The Adjectives corresponding to these Verbs, *memor*, *immemor*, always take a Genitive :

Omnes *immemorem* beneficii oderunt. CIC.  
*All hate one who is forgetful of a kindness.*

Verbs of *pitying*, *miserereor*, *miseresco*, take a Genitive :

Arcadii, quaeso, *miserescite* regis. VERG.  
*Take pity, I entreat, on the Arcadian king.*

*Note.*—*Miseror*, *commiseror*, take an Accusative.

1. I remember the letters which you wrote.
2. Nor is royal Juno unmindful of us.
3. O Turnus, in thee is our supreme hope, have pity on thine own (people).
4. Are you not forgetful of your former friends?
5. Who remembers all the things which he has seen?
6. The soldiers whom you pity had forgotten their duty.
7. I recall both the voice and face of the great Anchises.
8. You have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.
9. Exceedingly welcome to me is the remembrance of me which you have shown in your letter.
10. The veterans, mindful of their former valour, fought *hand-to-hand* [*cominus*].

1. Whoever thou art, *henceforth* [*hinc jam*] forget thy sorrow.
2. I pity those who *are without* [*lack*] friends.
3. Do you forget your country and city?
4. With Cæsar for your leader, you will not remember past disasters.
5. Go hence forgetful [*fem.*] of thy dead brothers.
6. Unmindful of us, they led the festal dances.
7. Forget slaughter and conflagrations.
8. Do you not pity those who have been wounded?
9. Hear, I pray, O judges, and *at last* [*aliquando*] pity our allies.
10. I have remembered your virtue and greatness of mind.

## XXXIX.

## Place Where.

- 178** Place where anything is or happens is generally in the Ablative Case with a Preposition; sometimes without a Preposition (especially in poetry), an Adjective of place being attached to the Substantive:

Castra sunt in Italiā contra rempublicam collocata. CIC.  
*A camp has been formed in Italy against the republic.*

Medio sedet insula ponto. OV.  
*The island lies in mid ocean.*

- 181** But in names of towns and small islands, also in domus and rus, Place where is expressed by the Case without a Preposition (Locative).

Quid Romae faciam? JUV.      Is habitat Miletī. TER.  
*What am I to do at Rome?      He lives at Miletus.*

Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis. CIC.  
*Philip is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.*

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca. VERG.  
*I have at home a father and an unjust stepmother.*

(For the Locative Case see Shorter Primer, 14, and notes on the Declensions; also 163.)

- 
1. An eagle had made its nest in a high oak.
  2. I shall live at Carthage, you will remain at home.
  3. Having stepped out of the ship the exile stood on Latian grass.
  4. The island of Crete lies in mid ocean.
  5. In Egypt there are many [and] very ancient cities.
  6. There was a bridge over [in] that river.
  7. This is the origin of the temple which was first consecrated at Rome.
  8. They pass [ago] the winter under their own roofs.
  9. Caius Cluilius was then governing at Alba.

10. Caesar enlisted two new legions in Nearer Gaul.
  11. These things were done at home and in war in the reign of Romulus.
  12. Cicero lived at Rome, Demosthenes at Athens.
- 

1. Now (for) a seventh day we were kept at Corcyra.
  2. Sulla was, as I have before said, at Naples.
  3. A greater war made-its-appearance at home than abroad.
  4. A timid old man was feeding a little donkey in a meadow.
  5. Arms were taken up at Tusculum sooner than at Rome.
  6. He *went on board* [mounted] a ship, which a frightful storm broke to pieces in the middle of the sea.
  7. The farmer lived-in a little cottage in the country.
  8. In that year the renown of the consuls was great at home and in war.
  9. He died by disease in the city in which he had been born.
  10. War was being waged in Italy between the Romans and Etruscans.
  11. Have you seen my garden in which so many flowers are growing?
  12. He took up his position on those very hillocks which the enemy had occupied.
-

## XL.

**Place Whither and Whence.****179 Place whither is in the Accusative with a Preposition :**

Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit. CAES.  
*Caesar hastened into Italy with long marches.*

**180 Place whence is in the Ablative with ab, ex, or de :**

Ex Asiā transis Europam. CURT.  
*Out of Asia you cross into Europe.*

But in names of **towns** and **small islands**, also in the words **domus** and **rus**, Place whither and whence is expressed by the Case without a Preposition.

**Place whither, by the Accusative :**

Regulus Carthaginem rediit. CIC.  
*Regulus returned to Carthage.*

Vos ite domum ; ego rus ibo.  
*Go ye home ; I will go into the country.*

**Place whence, by the Ablative :**

Demaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. CIC.  
*Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*

1. They bring the corn from the fields into the towns.
2. Cæsar marched into Gaul with three legions.
3. At dawn the enemy's cavalry approaches the camp.
4. Do not cross the river Tiber.
5. You will remain at Rome ; I shall go to Athens.
6. Heraclea with her two daughters takes refuge in the sanctuary.
7. They removed out of those dwellings which they had had beyond the river.
8. The army, victorious and rich in booty, was led to New Carthage into winter quarters.

9. The stone fell from the cliffs into the sea with a great noise.
  10. Night has come on ; they go home *free from fear* [*securus*].
  11. The general, having set out from Rome, left one legion at Brundisium and took across the rest of his forces to Greece.
- 

1. The Romans hastened to Tanetum, a village near the river.
  2. He crossed over from Gaul into Britain.
  3. The soldiers set out from the camp and marched to Tarentum.
  4. Rivers rush down from the hills.
  5. Amidst this confusion Tullia fled from her house.
  6. The lieutenant was sent by Caesar to *his friends at Rome* [to Rome to his friends].
  7. The Roman ambassadors crossed over from Africa into Spain.
  8. The little daughter was driving two she-goats back from the mountain.
  9. They built *warships* [long ships] on the river Loire, which flows into the ocean.
  10. Whither are you going ? Home.
  11. Evander, a venerable man, a fugitive from the Peloponnesus, was then governing those districts.
-

## XLI.

**Adverbs of Place.**

Place where, whither, and whence is often expressed by Adverbs of place.

|                                                  |                                                   |                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>hic</b> , <i>here</i><br>(at this place).     | <b>ibi</b> , <i>there</i><br>(at that place).     | <b>ubi</b> , <i>where ?</i><br>(at what place ?)     |
| <b>huc</b> , <i>hither</i><br>(to this place).   | <b>eo</b> , <i>thither</i><br>(to that place).    | <b>quo</b> , <i>whither ?</i><br>(to what place ?)   |
| <b>hinc</b> , <i>hence</i><br>(from this place). | <b>inde</b> , <i>thence</i><br>(from that place). | <b>unde</b> , <i>whence ?</i><br>(from what place ?) |

1. They came to Ardea, where Camillus was in exile.
  2. Let us return to the city whence we set out.
  3. I will lead him hither.
  4. Caesar crossed over to Greece, whither Pompey had already gone.
  5. He himself hastens thither with the infantry.
  6. In what place is it ? In this house where you live.
  7. Let us go to Athens and remain there.
  8. (There) was there a tree *laden* [very fruitful] with snowy apples, (and) a high mulberry-tree, close to the cold spring.
  9. But you, from what shores have you come, and whither do you direct your course ?
  10. Tarquinius died at Cumæ, whither he had betaken himself.
  11. On the right and the left, hence from the Colline gate, thence from the Nævian, the shout was given back.
- 
1. Fly hence, O boys ; a snake lurks in the grass.
  2. Come hither, and remain here.
  3. The ships returned to the same (place) whence they had set out.
  4. Where art thou, my daughter ? said she.
  5. Here, where the city now is, was then the site of the city.
  6. Go hence, said the consul, (and) announce these things to Caesar.
  7. Whence do you come, whither will you go ?
  8. Cicero, having received a letter from Rome, set out thither.
  9. Ovid, the poet, was banished by Augustus to Pontus, whence he never returned.
  10. Where are you, soldiers, whither are you flying ?
  11. Here is the rosy spring ; here around the streams the earth strews many-coloured flowers ; come hither.



## XLII.

## Time When.

- 183** Time at which, in answer to the question When ? is expressed by the Ablative : *hieme, in winter ; solis occasu, at sunset :*

Ego Capuam veni eo ipso die. Crc.  
*I came to Capua on that very day.*

*Note.*—Time when is also expressed by Adverbs, as *quando, when, cras, to-morrow, heri, yesterday.*

1. At the beginning of spring [first spring] they assembled according to [ad] the decree.
2. There was peace at home and abroad both in this and in the following year.
3. Yesterday I went to the town ; to-day I remain at home ; to-morrow I shall go down to the sea.
4. When will you set out ; whither will you go ?
5. On the next day they move the camp from that place.
6. Caesar set sail at daybreak, and reached Britain at the tenth hour.
7. In the following year the soldiers whom the consul had left as a garrison for the city were driven out by the enemy.
8. In the month of May the meadows are bright with varied flowers, in December they are white with snow.
9. Almost at the same time, by different roads, Brutus came to Ardea, Tarquinius to Rome.
10. But that confusion is quieted in a moment, after the roads had been cleared [freed] by the flight of the mountaineers.

1. This is the ring which I sent you on your birthday.
2. Where to-day is Lyra which shone yesterday ?
3. In spring the farmer sowed the crops which he will reap in autumn.
4. At dawn this fact having been established by the scouts, he sent forward all the cavalry.
5. Do not write to me every day.
6. On the following day our men, having made an attack, routed the enemy's cavalry.
7. The consul will shortly return from Asia, whither he went last year.
8. I shall leave the city in four days, travel to Carthage, and return hither on the first of March.
9. He orders Hanno to go at the first watch of the night with part of the forces.
10. Saguntum was taken in the beginning of the year in which Publius Cornelius and Titus Sempronius were the consuls,

## XLIII.

## Time Within and During which.

- 184 Time within which is generally expressed by the Ablative :

Quicquid est biduo sciemus. Cic.

*Whatever it is, we shall know in two days.*

- 185 Time during which, generally by the Accusative :

Pericles quadraginta annos praefuit Athenis. Cic.

*Pericles was leader of Athens forty years.*

- 
1. The enemy besiege their opponents day and night.
  2. He decided to remain with the army through the whole winter.
  3. Antony preceded me by two days.
  4. The tenth legion, having been sent to Gaul to the assistance of the allies, marched through Etruria in three days.
  5. The boy to whom I gave these books lost them all within a week.
  6. Romulus reigned thirty-seven years; Numa forty-three.
  7. The leader of the enemy awaited the contingents of his allies for three days and nights; on the fourth day he moved his camp.
  8. I have waited for you at Rome a whole month; I will remain here no longer.
  9. By the great diligence of the soldiers the work is finished in a few days.
  10. In the same year Agrippa Menenius dies, a man through all his life equally dear to the Senate and to the people.

- 
1. These things being done, we held the camp for four days.
  2. They travelled for about fifteen days.
  3. For three years from that time, there was neither certain peace nor war.
  4. The ship's captain kept the ship night and day far from the island.
  5. Tarquinius, who reigned for many years at Rome, was banished and died in exile.
  6. I was away during great part of your consulship.

7. A storm having arisen the ships were tossed about by the waves for many days; then a calm having followed they *made* [took] the harbour at last.
8. My brother governed Asia for a space of three years.
9. Once the city was besieged for ten years by all Greece.
10. Publius Cornelius the consul had come to the enemy's camp three days after Hannibal moved from the bank of the Rhone.

## XLIV.

## Space.

- 186** Space over which motion takes place is in the Accusative :

*Milia tum pransi tria repimus.* HOR.

*Then having had luncheon we crawl three miles.*

- 187** Space of measurement, answering the questions How high? How deep? How broad? How long? is generally in the Accusative :

*Erant muri Babylonis ducentos pedes alti.* PLIN.

*The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.*

1. Veii is twelve miles distant from the city.
2. Having advanced a three days' journey, they turned back again.
3. Caesar stationed the legion, which he had conveyed on horses, two hundred paces from that mound.
4. Continuous trenches *each five* [quini] feet deep were *made* [led]
5. Shall we go to Italy by land or by sea?

6. Do not advance so many miles from the camp *without the orders* [in]jussu] of the consul.
  7. They stretched one raft, two hundred feet long, fifty wide, from the land into the river.
  8. The walls of the city were surrounded by a ditch, twenty feet wide, ten feet deep.
  9. He withdrew all the rest of the defences four hundred paces from that trench.
  10. The Alps are many miles distant from the Pyrenees.
  11. They will advance a three days' march, reach Brundisium on the ides of May, and remain there five days.
- 

1. How many days' journey is it from Spain to Italy?
  2. He follows the enemy and places his camp three miles from their camp.
  3. The soldiers, having advanced four miles, pitched their camp in an open plain.
  4. The rest of the legions were a great distance away.
  5. This place was almost at an equal distance from the camp of Ariovistus and (that) of Caesar.
  6. A mound, two hundred feet long, fifty broad, was built up by the soldiers in a week.
  7. He proceeded (on) a journey of many days.
  8. In five and twenty days they built a rampart, three hundred and thirty feet wide, eighty feet high.
  9. The enemy will hasten to Tarentum, *a town which* [which town] is many days' journey distant from Rome.
  10. He pitches the camp a mile from Fidenae.
  11. The walls are of this pattern. Straight beams are placed in the ground continuous in length, standing at equal intervals, two feet apart.
-

# XLV.

## Recapitulatory.

1. The remembrance of slavery will make liberty more delightful.
2. O wretched exiles, whence do you come, whither will you go ?
3. We set sail at daybreak and reached Gaul at sunset.
4. The field which he had bought for three talents he sold for much more.
5. Quintius appointed Postumius, his own father-in-law, a man of very stern rule, (to be) dictator.
6. Will you not pity those who have been slain by the swords of the enemy ?
7. For three years we have lived at Rome ; in three months we shall move thence to Tarentum.
8. I *give* [impertio] a share of my burden to none, (but a share) of the glory to all good men.
9. Cicero set out at the third hour, and, having finished his business, returned home *towards* [ad] sunset.
10. The tribunes of the people immediately flee out of the city and betake themselves to Caesar.
11. The general who had been placed in command of the cavalry [see Ex. 16] reached Massilia on the seventh day.
12. The man who is [fut.] afraid in perilous circumstances will be of *no value* [non nauci].
13. Do you think that you are in the country? Depart from the house; go away into the country; go directly, depart from the door.

- 
1. In seven days the travellers advanced a hundred miles.
  2. Caius has lived both at Rome and at Athens; he also remained a whole year at Carthage.
  3. I have long considered, and I have remembered much.
  4. If you flee, the barbarians will follow; if you follow, they will flee.
  5. No one of them was *willingly* [a willing] enemy to me.
  6. Thither comes Lucius Caesar, a youth whose father was Caesar's lieutenant.
  7. The temple of Mercury was dedicated on the ides of May.
  8. Peace being established on these conditions, Porsenna led his army down from the Janiculum, and departed out of the Roman territory.
  9. Let us not pity those who have forgotten their duty.
  10. O my country, when shall I behold you ?
  11. On the sixth day we came to Delos from Athens.
  12. For how much have you bought these doors? I gave three minae for those two. *I bought --- for 3 minae*
  13. Expect me within two or three days.

## XLVI.

**Impersonal Verbs ; Case Construction.**

- 190** The following verbs of *feeling* take an Accusative of the person with a Genitive of the cause : **miseret, piget, paenitet, pudet, taedet :**

Miseret te aliorum, tui te nec miseret nec pudet. **PLAUT.**  
*You pity others, for yourself you have neither pity nor shame.*

- 191** **Libet, licet** take a Dative :

Ne libeat tibi quod non licet. **CIC.**  
*Let not that please you which is not lawful.*

- 192** **Interest, it is of importance, it concerns,** is used with the Genitive of the person or thing concerned, but with the feminine Ablatives *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* of the Possessive Pronouns :

Interest omnium recte facere. **CIC.**  
*It is for the good of all to do right.*

Et tuā et meā interest te valere. **CIC.**  
*It is of importance to you and to me that you should be well.*

- 193** **Refert, it concerns, it matters,** is also used with the feminine Ablatives of the Possessive Pronouns :

Quid meā refert cui serviam? **PHAED.**  
*What does it matter to me whom I serve?*

- 
1. I pity you, who are ashamed of your friends.
  2. Is it lawful for you to do this? Shall you not repent of this deed?
  3. This was of importance to many of the States in Greece.
  4. Crassus, I am ashamed of you.
  5. Where is your master? Where he pleases.
  6. You repent of your determination.

7. Men did not pity the punishment more than the crime.
  8. It pleases a good citizen to do what is for the good of his country.
  9. Are you weary of the labour which you have endured for so many years?
  10. This very greatly concerns you.
  11. Through the folly of the consuls the Romans adopted a policy of which they will presently repent.
  12. The war which we have undertaken is of more importance to us than to the Gauls.
- 

1. I am weary of your talking.
  2. He who is ashamed of his friends is unworthy of love.
  3. It is permitted to old men to enjoy this good fortune.
  4. I pity you, my mother ; I am vexed with myself.
  5. That, indeed, matters nothing to me.
  6. The citizens soon repented of the peace which they had obtained.
  7. O Vesta, be favourable, if we are allowed to come to your sacred rites.
  8. I am not only vexed at my folly, but ashamed of it.
  9. We pity those more who do not seek our pity than those who beg for it.
  10. What did this matter to him or to me ?
  11. Neither have I repented of (my choice of) soldiers, nor you of (your choice of) leader.
  12. The death of Clodius was of the greatest importance to the State.
-

## XLVII.

## Passive Construction.

- 194 When a sentence is changed from the Active to the Passive form :

The Object of a Transitive Verb becomes the Subject :  
the Subject becomes the Agent in the Ablative with  
the Preposition *a* or *ab* :

|                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| { Numa leges dedit.        | <i>Numa gave laws.</i>          |
| { A Numā leges datae sunt. | <i>Laws were given by Numa.</i> |

- 195 Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive :

|                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| { Nos currimus. Cic.     | <i>We run.</i>                        |
| { A nobis curritur. lit. | <i>There is running (done) by us.</i> |

Intransitive Verbs which take the Dative keep it in the Passive :

Nihil facile persuadetur invitis. QUINT.  
*The unwilling are not easily persuaded of anything.*

1. The standards have been taken by the enemy.
  2. No dart is sent from the wall by our men.
  3. The captives who have been led to the camp will be spared by the general.
  4. This was done by those who are now the chiefs of our State.
  5. I am not believed (when) speaking the truth.
  6. All ran together to the Capitol.
  7. They play in the camp ; the soldiers *lead an idle life* [*otia ago*].
  8. After they have come into the Roman territory, the consuls go to meet the enemy.
  9. They journeyed from about the fourth hour even till sunset.
  10. Where it is not given (to them) to conquer openly, they prepare an ambuscade and hidden weapons.
  11. At midnight with measured step they came to the city.
- 
1. You will be envied by many of your friends.
  2. I, the wife of Jupiter, am conquered by Aeneas.
  3. The fire is cherished by the sacred virgins in the temple of Vesta.
  4. The tribunes will not be obeyed by the common people.
  5. The city was taken by the army of the allies.
  6. Those to whom *the order had been given* [it had been commanded] by the captain hauled up the ships.
  7. In this manner they fought at Lake Regillus.
  8. They had come to the banks ; there were footprints on the banks.
  9. His resolution being known, they rush to arms.
  10. Meanwhile there was fighting between the two armies in a *cavalry* [equestrian] skirmish.
  11. Caesar, when it came to him, having been asked his opinion by the consul, spoke these words.



## XLVIII.

## Pronouns.

- 196** The Reflexive Pronoun **se, sese, sui, sibi**, of the Third Person, refers to the Subject in a Simple Sentence :

*Fur telo se defendit. Cic.      Ira sui impotens est. Sen.*  
*The thief defends himself      Anger is not master of itself.*  
*with a weapon.*

- 197** The Possessive **suus**, formed from the Reflexive, is used to express *his own, their own*, when emphasis is required, and usually refers to the Subject of the Verb :

*Nemo rem suam emit.*  
*No one buys what is his own.*

sometimes to other cases if the context shows that it cannot be referred to the Subject :

*Apibus fructum restituo suum. PHAEDR.*  
*I restore to the bees their own produce.*

- 198** **Ejus** is the Possessive used of the Third Person Singular where no emphasis is required and it does not refer to the Subject (*S.P. 63*) :

*Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu. Cic.*  
*Chilius asks you, and I (ask you) at his request.*

- 200** **Ipse, self**, is used of all the three Persons, with or without a Personal Pronoun : *ipse ibo, I will go myself.*

- 205** **Quisque, each** (severally), is often used with **se, suus** :

*Sibi quisque habeant quod suum est. PLAUT.*  
*Let them have each for himself what is his own.*

1. A learned man always has riches in himself.
2. Cicero was pleading his own and his friends' cause.
3. He who injures his friends injures himself also.
4. Fabius made war upon the Veians, and took Veii, their city.
5. To me my own son, to each one his own (son), is dear.
6. Brutus himself condemned his own sons to death.

7. The senator himself used to feed his own flocks.
  8. The Ambiani surrendered themselves and all their (belongings) without delay.
  9. After stabbing her husband [abl. abs.], she pierced herself with the sword.
  10. Waters are drunk more pleasantly from the spring itself.
  11. Caesar sent away Labienus and his [Labienus's] soldiers, but kept his own men with him.
  12. Do you not love them and their children who have always done good to you?
- 

1. We ourselves are most frequently the cause of our misfortunes.
  2. The rest, who have remained at home, feed themselves and those who are at the war.
  3. To each (man) his own children are most dear.
  4. Does this concern him or me?
  5. Scipio restored to the Syracusans their own things.
  6. She herself gathers the slender crocuses and the white lilies.
  7. *Whatever time* [what of time] is given to each one, he ought to be contented with it.
  8. Caesar held-back his own (men) from the battle.
  9. Despairing of safety [abl. abs.] they all kill themselves.
  10. Folly is powerless over itself.
  11. His arrival being known, Acco, who had been ringleader of that *plot* [plan], orders the multitude to assemble in the town.
  12. They command each one to carry from home three months' provisions.
-

## XLIX.

## Pronouns.

- 199 Hic, ille** are often used in contrast : *hic* usually meaning *the latter, ille the former* :

Quocumque adspicio, nihil est nisi pontus et aer,  
 nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax. Ov.  
*Whithersoever I look, there is nought but sea and sky,  
 the latter heaped with clouds, the former threatening with billows.*

- 201 Aliquis** means *some one* ; *dicat aliquis*, *suppose some one to say.*

- 202 Quidam** means *a certain person* (known but not named) :  
*vir quidam, a certain man.*

- 203 Quisquam** (Substantive), } *any at all,*  
*Ullus* (Adjective) : }

are often used after a negative word, or a question expecting a negative answer :

Nec amet quemquam nec ametur ab ullo. Juv.  
*Let him not love anyone nor be loved by any.*

Non ullus aratro dignus honos. Verg.  
*Not any due honour to the plough.*

- 204 Quivis, quilibet**, *any you like* :

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum. Hor.  
*It does not happen to every man to go to Corinth.*

*Note.—Idem, the same, is of all the three Persons ; with qui it expresses the same . . . as.*

1. Sure peace is better than hoped-for victory : *the former* [that] is in thine own (hand), *the latter* [this] in the hand of the gods.
2. Certainly some one will go, but no one has yet been sent.
3. A certain man, dying, left three daughters.
4. He then went away, and no one saw him afterwards.

5. Nor in any former war did they plunder more widely.
  6. Did you meet that man in the city? I met neither him nor anyone.
  7. I have seen Titus; he is the same *as* [who] he always was.
  8. I will restore that slave to this man; this man (will restore) me to my father.
  9. No place ought to be dearer to thee than (thy) native land.
  10. Anyone (you please) will say that; very few will do it.
  11. Thy father died that year, in the same city in which he had been born seventy-two years before.
  12. Ancus reigned twenty-four years, equal in the arts of peace and war to any one of the preceding kings.
- 

1. I have lost my children; is there anyone *as* [aeque] miserable?
  2. My father expects either me or some messenger.
  3. A certain man of high birth *rushed* [se projecit] into the forum with the tokens of all his misfortunes.
  4. The house is the same that you saw before.
  5. There was *no* [not any] man better or loving (what is) just more than he.
  6. May the same hour carry off both (of us).
  7. What can happen to anyone, can happen to *everyone* [whom-you-will].
  8. Some holidays will come which will call me with a free *mind* [pectus] to study.
  9. Scipio neither wrote to me, nor related the matter to any of his friends.
  10. There are two constellations: this one is nearer to the south-winds, that one to the north-winds; each takes its name from the wind.
  11. It is allowed here to do anything you please.
  12. The chief of this State was a certain Demetrius; he owed no one any *money* [coin].
-

## L.

## Pronouns.

**206** *Uterque*, *each* (of two), *both*, can be used with the Genitive of Pronouns ; but with Substantives it agrees in case :

|                                |                                         |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Uterque parens. Ov.</i>     | <i>Utroque vestrum delector. Crc.</i>   |
| <i>Both father and mother.</i> | <i>I am delighted with both of you.</i> |

**207** *Uter*, *which* (of two), is Interrogative : *uter melior ? which is the better ?*

**208** *Alter*, *the one, the other* (of two), *the second*, is the Demonstrative of *uter* : *alter ego*, *alter idem*, *a second self*.

*Note.*—The corresponding Negative is *neuter*, *neither* (S.P. 69).

**209** *Alius*, *another* (of any number), *different* :

|                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Fortuna nunc mihi, nunc alii benigna. Hor.</i> |
| <i>Fortune, kind now to me, now to another.</i>   |

*Alius*, *alius*, repeated in two clauses, mean *one . . . another ; alii, alii* (plural), *some . . . others*.

*Note.*—The gen. and abl. Sing. of *nullus*, *none* (S.P. 69), are used for the gen. and abl. of the Substantive *nemo*, *nobody*, which are very seldom found.

1. This pleases some, that (pleases) others.
2. One place held them both.
3. Which of all these men shall you place in command of the tenth legion ?
4. Which is the elder of these (two) brothers ?
5. Neither of the consuls, no one of all the senate will say this.
6. Each army was in sight of [to] the other.
7. The one fled, but the other remained.
8. Some were sent to the Volsci, others to Cumae.
9. No man has perpetual good.
10. It is one thing to plan an affair, another to accomplish it.
11. Believe neither of these (men) ; each is telling falsehoods [says false things].

12. *The one division* [the ones] retired to the mountain, the others betook themselves to their baggage and waggons.

---

1. Each is a fault, to believe no one and (to believe) all.
  2. Some fight with clubs, others throw stones.
  3. I had never received any letters more welcome than yours.
  4. *Different people* [others] *tell different tales* [relate other things] about these affairs; to me all things seem uncertain.
  5. Pardon another often, thyself never.
  6. He who pursues two hares catches neither.
  7. These things were done *in the presence of all* [all standing by], no one making an objection.
  8. Avarice impels some, fury and rashness others.
  9. He stood lifting a two-edged axe with both hands.
  10. Do not plant any tree, O Varus, before the sacred vine.
  11. Some of the soldiers were on guard, others were reaping corn, others were fortifying the camp.
  12. This matters to no one; that concerns you very greatly.
- 

## LI.

### Infinitive as Subject.

**211**     The **Infinitive** as a Verb has Tenses, Present, Past, or Future, it governs Cases and is qualified by Adverbs; as a Noun it is neuter, indeclinable, used only as Nominative or Accusative.

**212**     As Nominative:

*Juvat ire et Dorica castra visere.*     VERG.

*To go and view the Doric camp is pleasant.*

*Non vivere bonum est sed bene vivere.*     SEN.

*It is not living which is a good, but living well.*

1. Sailing is a great business.
  2. It is one (thing) to say this, another to do it.
  3. Nothing is more useful to a man than to speak accurately.
  4. It delights the soldier to hear the sound of the trumpet which calls (him) to battle.
  5. The one safety for the vanquished (is) not to hope for any safety.
  6. It is easy to conquer *those who do not resist* [the not resisting].
  7. It is not easy to fly without wings.
  8. What is sweeter than to manage an affair well for the public good?
  9. It is of great importance to me to know all these things.
  10. It was disgraceful indeed to fight, but it seemed more disgraceful to yield.
- 

1. Writing is easy; reading (is) even easier.
  2. It is a glorious (thing) to benefit the State.
  3. I repent *of having done* [to have done] those things of which you accuse me.
  4. Both to do and to endure *belongs to a Roman* [is Roman].
  5. It is (the duty) of a good citizen to fight bravely for his country.
  6. There *need be* [is] no delay in the work; it is yours to give, it is ours to conquer.
  7. It is a great consolation to be free from fault.
  8. Is it not disgraceful even to say those things which have been done by him?
  9. To have lived in stables, and to have *kept* [fed] sheēp, injured the Romans.
  10. It pleases me more to live with the honest than with the dishonest.
-

## LII.

**Prolative Infinitive.**

**214**      The Prolative Infinitive is often used to carry on the construction of Indeterminate and some other Verbs :

Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere. Cíc.  
*They are wont to reflect long who wish to do great things.*

The Prolative Infinitive is also used with the Passive of Verbs of saying and thinking :

Barbara narratur venisse venefica tecum. Ov.  
*A barbarian sorceress is said to have come with thee.*

*Note.*—In English we say *I ought to write, I ought to have written* ; in Latin it is the tense of *debeo* which changes, not the dependent infinitive :

|                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| Debeo scribere. | <i>I ought to write.</i>        |
| Debui scribere. | <i>I ought to have written.</i> |

1. Here (is) the station for the fleet, here they were wont to fight in battle.
2. You ought to relate the whole affair to your friend, and to ask him his opinion.
3. We ought to have stormed the town on that day.
4. The lion began to roar with a very loud voice.
5. You do not (desire) to see your own son more than he desires to see his.
6. Hannibal resolved to make war on the Saguntines.
7. He began to flee *across* [per] the plain, and with *swift* [light] course evaded the dogs.
8. His body could not be fatigued nor his mind subdued by any toil.
9. Caesar, from these causes which I have related, had decided to cross the Rhine.



10. The soldiers were unwilling to spare the captured enemy, whose comrades had killed so many Roman citizens.
11. Recreation ought sometimes to be given to the mind.
12. The Britons are said to have fought *in* [out of] chariots, by which Caesar's legions were greatly alarmed.

- 
1. So the mouse and the frog both began to swim.
  2. Our friends bid us hope.
  3. Thus I was wont to compare great things with small.
  4. Having found a ford there, they endeavoured to lead a part of their forces across the river.
  5. Yesterday I could have done *what* [that which] you advise, to-day I cannot.
  6. On seeing the enemy, our cavalry began to advance and to make an attack upon the vanguard.
  7. The Germans do not allow wine to be imported to them.
  8. I shall not be able to leave the city to-morrow, but I will try to return home within seven days.
  9. In their regret for Romulus the Roman people did not cease to demand a king.
  10. He hastened to lead the army across the river Aisne, which is in the furthest borders of the Remi, and there pitched the camp.
  11. Cicero is reported to have said all this in the presence of the people.
  12. The Britons are thought to be about to give hostages to Caesar.
-

## LIII.

## Recapitulatory.

1. Do you repent of having taken part in these *great* [so great] affairs?
2. I will go instead of you if you do not like (to go).
3. These men can indeed do nothing else, but none of them will be envied.
4. Which of the consuls will go to Asia? which will remain at Rome?
5. Pompey himself, instigated by the enemies of Caesar, had *with-drawn* [*averto*] himself from his friendship.
6. I am ashamed of your worthlessness, of which you are not ashamed yourself.
7. All the rest believed me, but one could not be persuaded.
8. It is human to love, it is human also to forgive.
9. The scout concealed himself in the cave for three days *and none* [nor anyone] of the enemy saw him.
10. Sinning is surely lawful for no one.
11. Freely grant this to your friends which you yourself demand of [ab] a friend.
12. Having announced these things to the senate, the ambassadors returned each to his own city.

- 
1. It pleases the rest to go to Veii; I prefer to remain at home.
  2. It is permitted you to leave the city, but those who do leave [fut. perf.] will repent.
  3. From many sides they run [passive], *shouting* [with a shout] through all the streets to the forum.
  4. It is (the duty) of a good citizen to benefit the State, not to injure it.
  5. To some determination was wanting, to some courage, to some opportunity; the will (was wanting) to no one.
  6. I am allowed to enjoy with a calm and tranquil mind the sight of the city which I have preserved.
  7. Who has taught this boy to speak in-Latin [adv.]?
  8. Our soldiers all safe to a *man* [one], few being wounded, betook themselves to the camp.
  9. Thus two kings in *succession* [*deinceps*], the former in war, the latter in peace, strengthened the State.
  10. I am ashamed to remember all the benefits which the leader has conferred (on) me.
  11. I can name country-folk from the Sabine province, neighbours and friends of mine, in whose absence the *more important* [greater] operations are *scarcely ever* [almost never] done in the field.
  12. The Germans having heard a shout behind their back, (and) having thrown away their arms, *burst forth from* [cast themselves out of] the camp.

## LIV.

## Gerund.

- 216** The Accusative of the Gerund follows some Prepositions, especially *ad*, *ob*, *inter* :

*Ad bene vivendum breve tempus satis est longum.* CIC.

*For living well a short time is long enough.*

*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.* QUINT.

*The characters of boys show themselves in their play.*

- 217** The Genitive of the Gerund is used after Substantives and Adjectives :

*Ars scribendi discitur.* Cupidus te audiendi sum. CIC.

*The art of writing is learnt.* *I am desirous of hearing you.*

- 218** The Dative of the Gerund follows a few Verbs, Adjectives, and Substantives :

*Par est disserendo.* CIC.

*He is equal to arguing.*

*Dat operam legendo.*

*He gives attention to reading.*

- 219** The Ablative of the Gerund expresses Cause or Manner, or it follows a Preposition :

*Fugiendo vincimus.*

*We conquer by flying.*

*De pugnando deliberant.*

*They deliberate about fighting.*

1. We ourselves learn by teaching.
2. Then Tullus *gives* [makes] to the ambassadors the *right* [power] of speaking.
3. With these the messenger goes back to Rome to take counsel.
4. The barbarians were most skilful in swimming, but in running (they were) by no means equal to our men.
5. The zest and pleasure of hunting hurries men away into the mountains through snows and frosts.
6. Caesar, having obtained weather suitable for sailing, weighed anchor at daybreak.
7. The war which we have waged for so many years will be finished by fighting, not by talking.
8. Orpheus was almost equal to Apollo in singing.

9. There was an end both for the Gauls of frightening and for the Romans of being-frightened when they escaped from the pathless and impenetrable wood.
  10. Many have surpassed this leader in fighting, but no one in running away.
  11. By nothing do men approach nearer to the gods than by giving deliverance to men.
  12. The ancient Romans when an injury had been received [abl. abs.] preferred to pardon (rather) than to avenge it, and increased their power almost more by sparing the conquered than by conquering.
- 

1. This boy is skilled in reading, but he does not pay attention to writing.
  2. The river *rises* [is born] small, but gains supplies *as it goes* [in going].
  3. Cincinnatus *in the midst of* [inter] ploughing was named dictator by the messengers of the Senate.
  4. The design of the general was *to make the war continuous* [bellum continue] by wintering (on the spot).
  5. By the zest of pursuit they are drawn to the place of ambuscade.
  6. This (man) could conquer the swift winds in running.
  7. We are both weary, I with being beaten, he with beating.
  8. To think well and do rightly is enough for living well and happily.
  9. By coming hither you have saved the army of the Roman people; by breaking-out hence save yourselves.
  10. When he saw them all kindled with eagerness *to hear* [of hearing], Scipio began to speak thus.
  11. The Roman State grew by doing and daring, not by these sluggish counsels which the timid call cautious.
  12. By reading men become more learned; by speaking (they become) *ready-witted* [ingenio promptus].
-

## LV.

## Gerund and Gerundive.

**220** If the Verb is Transitive, the **Gerundive** is more often used than the Gerund, agreeing with the Object as an Adjective. It takes the Gender and Number of the Object, but the Object is drawn into the Case of the Gerundive.

**221** The Gerund or Gerundive (the Gerund of an Intransitive, or the Gerundive of a Transitive Verb) is used to express that something should or must be done; often with the Dative of the Agent.

Eundum est.

*One must go.*

Mihi eundum est.

*I must go.*

Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda. CAES.

*All things had to be done by Caesar at the same time.*

1. I must go, you must remain.
2. We learn by reading; we learn by reading books.
3. Great gratitude should be *rendered* [*habeo*] to the immortal gods.
4. We must set out at once (and) reach Rome at daybreak.
5. A desire of regaining liberty seized the minds of the Gauls.
6. Here, where you have first met the enemy, soldiers, you must conquer or die.
7. All these things will be useful *for* [*ad*] mending the ships.
8. He sought on all sides a pretext for stirring up war.
9. Every workman must be trusted in his own art.
10. The mountain was good for feeding cattle.
11. Nothing seems to Xenophon so kingly as the pursuit of cultivating the land.
12. Within these ten years we have appointed decemvirs for *drawing-up* [*scribo*] the laws.
13. During those days Fulvius the consul held assemblies for electing censors.

1. Whatever happens must be borne with a tranquil mind.
  2. Many opportunities of making plunder were given to our men.
  3. This was of great use to us for carrying on the war.
  4. I must use these books which you have given me.
  5. He dedicated many other places for *the performance of* [doing] sacred rites.
  6. If you wish me to weep, you must first grieve yourself.
  7. The armed enemy must be conquered; the conquered must be spared.
  8. The labour of reaping corn will soon be present to the farmers.
  9. The Transalpine Gauls *chose* [took] a site for founding the town not far *from the place* [thence] where Aquileia now is.
  10. We must wage war with the Volsci, whom we have conquered in so many battles.
  11. All eloquence *in* [of] speaking is increased by reading the orators and poets.
  12. The dictator praises the soldiers by whose valour the camp had been defended, and incites the rest to emulate their virtues.
  13. He led the army into that province to lay waste the country, thence to Tarentum to attack the city.
- 

## LVI.

### Supines.

**224**     The Supines are used as Cases of the Infinitive :

**225**     The Supine in *-um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion, expressing the purpose :

Lusum it Maecenas, dormitum ego. HOR.  
*Maecenas goes to play, I to sleep.*

**226**     The Supine in *-u* (Dative and Ablative) is used with some Adjectives, such as *facilis*, *dulcis*, *turpis*, and the Substantives *fas*, *nefas* : *turpe factu*, *disgraceful to do* :

Hoc fas est dictu. CIC.     Libertas, dulce auditu nomen. LIV.  
*It is lawful to say this.     Freedom, a name sweet to hear.*

---

1. The ambassadors of the Gauls went to Rome to announce these things to the Senate.
  2. These things are easy to say, but very difficult to do.
  3. Thence Hannibal sent the two parts of the army to forage.
  4. Hither bullocks will come through the meadows to drink.
  5. They have dared nothing anywhere worthy to be spoken of.
  6. I am not wont to refuse if anyone *asks* [*voco*] me *to come to dinner* [to eat].
  7. Ambassadors came from Rome to complain of wrongs.
  8. What shall seem best to be done, you will do.
  9. I shall now go away to write a letter.
  10. It is wrong to do this, but most useful (to do) that.
- 

1. Now you come to mock your master.
  2. He led the soldiers across the river to plunder.
  3. All these things which you relate are most disgraceful to hear.
  4. Virtue is difficult to be found; it requires a guide.
  5. We have come to Baiæ to lament rather than to bathe.
  6. (Those) who spare a few wicked (men) go (about) to ruin all good (men).
  7. The Haedui sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask help.
  8. Wonderful to say, an *olive* [*oleaginus*] root is pushed-forth from the dry wood.
  9. This one sends-for me to go-bail, this one to hear his writings, leaving all my duties.
  10. The Campanian people has sent us as ambassadors to you, O senators, to seek from you friendship and aid.
-

## LVII.

**Participles.**

A Participle, agreeing with a Noun in any Case, often expresses within one sentence what might be expressed by a dependent or a co-ordinate clause :

Saepe sequens agnam lupus est a voce retentus. Ov.  
*Often, when following a lamb, the wolf has been held back by his voice.*

Elephantes, amnem transitori, minimos praemittunt. Plin.  
*Elephants, intending to cross a river, send forward the smallest ones.*

Timotheus a patre acceptam gloriam multis auxit virtutibus. Nep.  
*Timotheus increased by many virtues the glory which he had received from his father.*

Sacras jaculatus arces terruit urbem. Hor.  
*He has smitten the sacred towers and terrified the city.*

Caesar milites hortatus castra movit. Caes.  
*Caesar addressed the soldiers, and moved his camp.*

- 
1. The citizens went out of the city and met the returning legions.
  2. Shall we believe Caius *when he says* [saying] such things?
  3. Not a few fled *in fear of* [having feared] judgment.
  4. Messengers were sent to Rome by the Saguntines, asking help for the war.
  5. Hail, Caesar! we (who are) about to die salute thee.
  6. (Though) conquered, thou yet wilt conquer, and (though) overthrown, O Troy, thou wilt rise again.
  7. Many often saw (him) lying on the ground, covered with his military cloak.
  8. You have lain-in-wait for me the consul.



9. The inhabitants wandered through the fields and awaited the guests (who were) soon about to come.
  10. The enemy attacked our men when getting out of the ship, and slew many.
  11. She, having *given up* [laid down] all hope [abl. abs.], went away never to return.
- 

1. He went home *in haste* [hastening].
  2. I, who am about to depart, address my sorrowing friends *for the last time* [extremum].
  3. Bacchus collects the wandering bees and shuts them in a hollow tree.
  4. The boys had performed their labours and were going home.
  5. Caesar, with all his men following, made an attack on the enemy and put them to flight.
  6. I have spoken few words, looking on the ground.
  7. A city rises which shall place its victorious foot upon (all) lands.
  8. The green waters closed *his mouth as he spoke* [the mouth of him speaking].
  9. After a few days the sheep saw the wolf (which was) lying in the pit.
  10. Hannibal, having entered their boundaries with a hostile army (and) having laid waste their lands [abl. abs.], attacks the city *at three points* [tripartito].
  11. Finish, said he, the work (which you have) begun.
- 



## LVIII.

## Adjectives.

Some Adjectives are used alone to express persons or things : sapiens, *a wise man* ; boni, *the good* ; bona, *goods* :

Bonos boni diligunt. CIC.

*The good love the good.*

Some, when used as Substantives, can be qualified by other Adjectives : amicus, *friend* ; vicinus, *neighbour* ; dextra, *right hand* ; majores, *ancestors* :

Vetus vicinus ac necessarius. CIC.

*An old neighbour and intimate acquaintance.*

Medius, *middle*, and superlatives of place and time, as summus, imus, primus, ultimus, are used with partitive force : medio ponto, *in mid ocean* ; ad imam quercum, *at the foot of the oak* : also totus, *whole*, reliquus, *remaining* :

Prima luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur. CAES.

*At dawn of day the mountain top was held by Labienus.*

Adjectives are sometimes used like Adverbs ; solus mansit, *only he remained*, or *he remained alone* :

Hannibal primus in proelium ibat, ultimus excedebat. LIV.

*Hannibal was first to go into battle, last to withdraw.*

*Note.*—Where in English an Adjective of quality is placed before a proper name, in Latin it is usually placed in a phrase in Apposition to the proper name, and is often in the Superlative form : Scipio, vir fortissimus, *the brave Scipio* ; Athenae, urbs clarissima, *the celebrated Athens*.

- 
1. Do not entrust all things to one ship.
  2. The leader of the Gauls had pitched his camp in the middle of the plain.
  3. Romulus *gained sole* [alone gained] possession of the kingdom.

4. The timid Minucius did not dare to engage in battle with the Aequi.
  5. The remainder of the night was given to rest on both sides.
  6. The greatest things often spring from the smallest beginnings.
  7. The renowned city of Mitylene has become yours, O Romans.
  8. In the middle of the sea lies a small but beautiful island *where* [whither] very few ships touch.
  9. Marcus was the last of all to reach the top of the mountain.
  10. At the end of the year there was some peace, but it was disturbed by a contest of the patricians and the plebs.
  11. The just judges have condemned the prisoner to death.
  12. He commanded Cincius with one army to guard the part of the island where that kingdom had been, with the other (army) he himself was guarding the rest of the island.
- 

1. I was asked my opinion first by the consul.
  2. Almost the whole of the Peloponnesus itself is in the sea.
  3. A colony was planted at the large and splendid city of Capua.
  4. Citizens and rustics, all who speak in-Latin [adv.], understand these things.
  5. Our brave general with a few cohorts will withstand all the forces of the Gauls.
  6. Out of twenty, I alone remained.
  7. In the bottom of the valley the air is mild; on the top of the mountain all things are covered with snow.
  8. Caius was the first to say this, the last to do it.
  9. Pompey prepared-for that war at the end of the winter, and finished (it) in the middle of summer.
  10. There is no ill without some good.
  11. Licinius Stolo was the first elected consul *from among* [out of] the plebs.
  12. He erects a tower on the end of the bridge and strengthens that place with great fortifications.
-

## LIX.

**Conjunctions and Correlation.**

Co-ordinative Conjunctions connect two or more Nouns in the same Case :

Miratur portas, strepitumque et strata viarum. VERG.  
*He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements.*

Pronouns, Adverbs, and Conjunctions are said to be Correlatives when they correspond to one another as Antecedent and Relative.

**Talis . . . qualis**, mean of *such a kind . . . as* ; **tantus . . . quantus**, as *much* or *as great . . . as* ; **tot . . . quot**, as *many . . . as* :

Tanto brevius omne, quanto felicius tempus. PLIN.  
*The happier a time is, so much the shorter is it.*

The following Conjunctions are used as Correlatives

|               |                    |                |              |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------|
| et . . . et   | both . . . and.    | tam . . . quam | as . . . as. |
| aut . . . aut | } either . . . or. | sic . . . ut   | so . . . as. |
| vel . . . vel |                    | ut . . . ita   | as . . . so. |
| nec . . . nec | neither . . . nor. |                |              |

Aut Caesar aut nullus.      Ut optasti ita est. CRO.  
*Either Caesar or nobody.      As you wished so it is.*

1. He is not such a man as I have hitherto believed.
2. I was formerly as free as your son.
3. Either you or I must go to Caesar's camp.
4. As often happens, the larger part overcame the better.
5. The number of the enemy was not so great as it had been in the previous year.
6. We do not need such help as you have offered us.

7. Do not join battle to-day, for reinforcements will be here to-morrow.
  8. Every animal uses its own limbs *in such manner* [so] as it will.
  9. He held the place as long as he could bear the toil.
  10. The spies remained in the city for seven days, and no one saw them.
  11. I shall not sell this horse for as much as that one.
  12. No one ever had so many and such great *gifts* [res] as were given to Pompey by the immortal gods.
- 
1. Not only do they make peace, but also one State out of the two.
  2. The work was done with such zeal as I had never before seen.
  3. As you have done [fut. perf.] good to many, so you will have many friends.
  4. I have not so many acres of land as you have.
  5. He is not now such a man as (he was when) you knew him.
  6. These things have been said by me as shortly as they could be said.
  7. That was indeed the common cause of sorrow and fear and danger.
  8. I am as much a slave as you, and yet at home I was free.
  9. These are the general's commands; you, therefore, go away to Rome, but I will remain in the country.
  10. Why are you not as skilled in war as Fabius?
  11. Believe neither this man nor that; each is lying.
  12. I eagerly expect your letters, and such ones, moreover, as I greatly desire.
-

## LX.

## Recapitulatory.

1. The ship having been wrecked, the sailors reached the island by swimming.
  2. Where you resolve [fut. perf.] to live, there I also will remain.
  3. On the top of the mountain the cold was such as we had never before felt.
  4. In the whole of Italy levies are being raised, arms are being ordered.
  5. In that year, for the last time, ambassadors came from Porsenna about *restoring* (*reduco*) Tarquin to the kingdom.
  6. All that he has said is false; we must never believe such a man.
  7. Having spoken these things, Scipio awaited *in silence* [silent] the reply of the ambassadors.
  8. Alexander, when dying, had given his own ring to Perdicas.
  9. All things being *lost* [*perditus*], yet virtue can support herself.
  10. Our men having attacked the enemy (who were) entangled in the river, killed a great number of them.
  11. Let us send three men to *bear these tidings* [announce these things] to our allies.
  12. What do you *think* [*censeo*] about this matter? I think that we ought to await reinforcements.
- 

1. I have answered the chief accusations; now I must answer the rest.
2. The messengers met the consul when he was about to cross into Africa.
3. In spring the farmer pays attention to ploughing the fields.
4. As many colours were there as nature has, and the earth glistened, painted with various flowers.
5. As in seeds is the origin of trees and stems, so you were the seed of this most lamentable war.
6. Some of the travellers thought that they ought to set out immediately; others preferred to remain there a few days.
7. The Peloponnesus is a peninsula *joined* [adhering] to the continent by the narrow pass of the isthmus.
8. Those must be pardoned who have done wrong *unwillingly* [adj.].
9. Tarquin, struck *by a side blow* [from the side], was taken back by his own (men) into *a place of safety* [*tutum*].
10. This place was given (to them) to live in, which thenceforward they called Tuscan Vicus.
11. Fortune helps the daring.
12. Corn having been provided for the army, he set forth into Italy, *to hold courts of justice* [*conventus ago*].

## EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

## I. SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

## LXI.

## 240 (1) Indirect Statement. (Accusative with Infinitive.)

The **Accusative with Infinitive** is the most usual form of Indirect Statement :

|                   |                        |                                 |                          |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Valeo.            | } Direct<br>Statement. | Scis me valere.                 | } Indirect<br>Statement. |
| <i>I am well.</i> |                        | <i>You know that I am well.</i> |                          |

Nuntiatum est Scipionem adesse. CAES.  
*It was announced that Scipio was at hand.*

Democritus dicit innumerabiles esse mundos. CIC.  
*Democritus says there are countless worlds.*

Illud temere dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos. CIC.  
*It was rashly said that all wise men are good.*

1. They said that they would come.
2. They say that they will not come.
3. I heard yesterday that many foreign birds had been seen in the country.
4. You have often heard that the city of Syracuse is the greatest of (all) Greek cities.
5. They said that the ships would soon return.
6. It is right that the slaves should be sent to Rome.
7. It was right that all should depart from the forum.
8. They say that they can reach Rome in thirty days.
9. My friend said that he should not leave the city on the following day.
10. The farmer informed me that many sheep were perishing of cold, and that he himself had lost some.
11. They say that Pompey with the ships will soon be present.
12. It was announced to the senate that Hannibal had crossed the river Rhone, and was hastening to the Alps.
13. I hear that many good men have come into Africa, and know that some were (there) before.

1. I do not believe that you think thus.
  2. Caius says that nothing is being done about this matter.
  3. It is well known that we have been sent hither *for the good* [causa] of the state.
  4. We hear that Cato has gone away to the country, and no one believes that he will return.
  5. We heard that the general had blamed his soldiers on account of their sloth.
  6. They say that they (themselves) will do all things.
  7. They said that they (others) would do all things.
  8. Do you not understand that no one except the consul foresaw this danger?
  9. Do not believe that I shall buy the estate *against your will* [you being unwilling].
  10. Caesar considered that in that battle the valour of Crastinus was most distinguished.
  11. They explain that nothing is left to them except the soil of their territory.
  12. He exclaimed that he was a free man and of a free state.
  13. It was reported by the scouts that the road over the mountain ridges was blocked by snow.
- 

## LXII.

**Indirect Statement. (Accusative with Infinitive.)**

Verbs of *hoping, promising, swearing, threatening*, generally take the Accusative with Future Infinitive :

Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum. Cíc.

*He promised that he would return the money.*

Sperabam id me assecuturum. Cíc.

*I hoped to attain this.*

*Note.*—Esse is often omitted.

The Supine in *-um* with the Infinitive *iri*, used impersonally, forms a Future Passive Infinitive :

Aiunt urbem captum iri.

*They say that the city will be taken.*

—Literally, *they say there is a going to take the city.*



1. I hope that he will soon return.
  2. The consuls promised that they would set out immediately.
  3. Caesar said that he would take them, and keep (them) under his protection.
  4. They say that the money will be repaid.
  5. It was answered that the youths could be pardoned, but not the old men.
  6. The slave undertook to finish the business with the greatest zeal.
  7. Did I not say that this would happen ?
  8. I hope that you will live long and prosperously.
  9. It was announced that ships would be sent to the Piraeus.
  10. I shall never forget that I am indebted to you for many and great (benefits).
  11. He promised to take charge of that affair (see Ex. XVII.).
  12. You know that all those things (of) which I am speaking, and am about to speak, are better known to all who were then in Italy than to me who was not (there).
- 

1. They send ambassadors to him and promise that they will *fulfil* [do] his commands.
2. It is certain that in that year, Alexander, king of Epirus, *brought* [appello] a fleet to Italy.
3. He hopes to reach the city in five days.
4. The Nervii said that they would neither send ambassadors, nor accept any condition of peace.
5. He whom you defend hopes that he will be acquitted.
6. They perceived that the liberty of the people was safer in war than in peace, among enemies than among fellow-citizens.
7. He promised to come to the help of the leader of the cohort.
8. But yet I think I ought to warn you again and again.
9. The consul Lentulus promises that he will not *fail* [be wanting to] the Senate and the State.
10. Ariovistus replied to the Haedui that he would not give back the hostages.
11. They say that the bridge over the river will be broken down.
12. I grieved, O Senators, that the State, formerly preserved by your and my counsels, was about to perish in a short time.

## LXIII.

**241                      (2) Indirect Command or Request.**

A Clause depending on a Verb of *commanding, wishing, exhorting, entreating*, is in the Conjunctive ; if positive, with *ut* ; if negative, with *ne* :

|           |                      |                               |                        |
|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Vale.     | } Direct<br>Command. | Cura ut valeas.               | } Indirect<br>Command. |
| Farewell. |                      | Take care that you keep well. |                        |

Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus. CIC.  
*It is required of a friend that he be sincere.*

Mihi ne abscedam imperat. TER.  
*He commands me not to go away.*

*Note.*—Verbs of *fearing* take the Conjunctive : with *ne* to express fear that something *will* happen ; with *ut* or *ne non* to express fear that something *will not* happen :

|                             |  |                                     |
|-----------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Metuo ne faciat.            |  | Metuo ut faciat (or ne non faciat). |
| <i>I fear he may do it.</i> |  | <i>I fear he may not do it.</i>     |

**Sequence of Tenses.**

**245**      The general rule for the Sequence of Tenses is that a Primary Tense in the Principal Sentence is followed by a Primary Tense in the dependent Clause, a Historic Tense by a Historic Tense.

- 
1. Remain here ; do not go away.
  2. Cicero commanded his slave to remain there ; not to go away.
  3. Take care that you write these letters before *five o'clock* [the eleventh hour].
  4. The father warned his son not to believe Claudius *when he said* [saying] such things.
  5. I beseech you by [prep.] all the gods not to desert me.

6. They beg and pray that they may be taken back to Sicily in the ships.
  7. Soldiers ! attack the camp ; do not fear the enemy.
  8. The general exhorted his soldiers to attack the camp, not to fear the enemy.
  9. I advise you to be mindful of your friends, forgetful of injuries.
  10. This one thing is required of us, to finish the business with the greatest zeal.
  11. The farmer commanded his sons and slaves to reap the corn, for (he said) the day would be fine.
  12. The leader ordered the soldiers not to go out of the camp *in his absence* [himself being absent], (and said) that he would return in three days.
- 

1. Lentulus prays and entreats Caesar to spare him.
  2. I do not ask that something new may be decreed, but that nothing new be decreed.
  3. He exhorts them not to succumb to the toil.
  4. I beg this of you that you will, most carefully attend to your health.
  5. The senate commanded the decemvirs to inspect the Sibylline books.
  6. They began to lay down laws that no one should be a thief or a robber.
  7. He asks all these to help him with corn.
  8. I will tell your [slaves] to copy your book (and) send it to you.
  9. Caesar wrote to Lamia (ordering him) to get all things ready for the games.
  10. The Germans begged him not to move the camp nearer to them.
  11. He orders Caius Volusenus, when he had searched out all these things, to return to him as soon as possible.
  12. The soldiers, being warned by the scouts that they should beware of a hidden trench and ditches, halt, and arrive at the harbour by a long march.
-

## LXIV.

242

## (3) Indirect Question.

Indirect Question is formed by a dependent Interrogative Pronoun or Particle with a Verb in the Conjunctive :

|                      |             |                               |             |
|----------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| Valesne?             | } Direct    | Quaero valesne.               | } Indirect  |
| <i>Are you well?</i> | } Question. | <i>I ask if you are well.</i> | } Question. |

Nescio quid facias.  
*I do not know what you are doing.*

Fac me certiolem quando adfuturus sis. Cic.  
*Let me know when you are coming.*

- 
1. Who are you? whence do you come? whither are you going?
  2. The slave asked the traveller who he was, whence he came, whither he was going.
  3. I shall leave Rome to-morrow; I do not know when I shall return.
  4. Did Caius remain in the country or return to Rome? It is uncertain whether he remained or returned.
  5. Not how much anyone has is to be weighed, but *how much* [gen. of value] he is worth.
  6. The consul asked me when I had seen Pompey; he said that he should meet Caesar to-morrow.
  7. It is not so easy for us as for you to judge what you can accomplish.
  8. I ask what you had then done.
  9. The judge asked what was the cause (and) who was the instigator of this crime.
  10. Where the Nervii are, and how far away they are, I do not know.
  11. You see how great a crime has been reported to you.
  12. He consults as a suppliant the oracles of Phoebus, and asks what land he is to inhabit.

1. When, by what way, and whither, Caesar is coming, we do not as yet know.
  2. See what (a difference) there is between you and your grandfather.
  3. How am I to do [gerundive] all these things? I do not know how I am to do them.
  4. The wise man is ever considering of what kind his life is, not how long it is.
  5. Where is the leader of the Gauls? how many men has he with him?
  6. Labienus asked the scouts where the leader of the Gauls was, (and) how many men he had with him.
  7. I ask this, why you have called me a foreigner?
  8. Do not ask by whom all these things have been done.
  9. No one knows in what place the enemy have pitched their camp.
  10. Do you see how Soracte stands white with deep snow?
  11. Do you ask how highly I value you?
  12. He wondered what was the cause of their grief, and enquired about it from themselves.
-

## II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

### LXV.

#### Consecutive Clauses.

- 243     1. Consecutive Clauses express *consequence*, and are joined by *ut*, *so that*, *ut non*, *so that . . . not*, with the *Conjunctive* :

Non sum ita hebes ut istud dicam.    Crc  
*I am not so stupid as to say that.*

*Note.*—A negative consequence is always expressed by *ut* with the appropriate negative: *ut non*, *so that . . . not*; *ut nemo*, *so that . . . no one*; *ut nihil*, *so that . . . nothing*; *ut numquam*, *so that . . . never*.

- 
1. No one is so wise that he never makes a mistake.
  2. So great was the ardour of the soldiers that they took the camp at the first onset.
  3. The Roman and the Latin *met* [ran together] with such violence that each was thrown down off his horse.
  4. The matter, having been reported to the senate, *so pleased* [was so pleasing to] the senators that they sent back six thousand of the captives to the Latins.
  5. So great is the resemblance *between* [of] these brothers that no one knows which is the elder and which the younger.
  6. Are you so foolish as to believe everyone?
  7. This being done, such great fear ensued *that although* [cum] there was a legion for the protection of Messina, the town was hardly defended.
  8. The ships advanced with such speed that they reached the harbour at daybreak.
  9. *Such* [ista] virtue was formerly in this republic that brave men *visited* [coerceo] with severer penalties a bad citizen than the bitterest enemy.

10. Neither am I so bold as to think that the camp should be attacked without hope, nor so cowardly as myself to fail (in doing my part).
  11. The slave is so idle that he has not yet finished this work.
- 

1. The ships, *driven against one another* [inter se incitatae], struck together *with such force* [so heavily] that each of the two suffered [plur.] exceedingly from the collision.
  2. That witness told so many falsehoods that no one believed him.
  3. My neighbour loves the country so much that he will never return to Rome.
  4. Such disagreement exists between them that they attempt to set upon each other [manum conserere] and fight with weapons.
  5. The speech so inflamed their minds that they seemed ready to follow [fut. participle] the defender of their liberty through right and wrong.
  6. Do not be in such a hurry [make such haste] as to leave your work unfinished.
  7. He has always so borne himself as to be worthy of the highest praise.
  8. I shall so bear myself in the State as always to remember the things which I have done.
  9. When the disaster was known, such lamentation followed that the city seemed (as if) taken by the enemy at that very time.
  10. There was such scarcity of all things that many were without [careo] food for three days.
  11. In a short time Porsenna rendered the whole Roman territory so insecure that not only the other things out of the fields, but also the cattle [sing.] were driven into the city.
-

## LXVI.

## Final Clauses.

- 213     2. Final Clauses express *purpose*, and are introduced by *ut, in order that, ne, in order that . . . not*, with the Con-junctive :

Venio ut videam.  
*I come that I may see.*

Abii ne viderem.  
*I went away that I might not see.*

*Note.*—A negative purpose is always expressed by *ne* with the appropriate word : *in order . . . that no one, ne quis ; that nothing, ne quid ; that never, ne umquam.*

---

They all went down to the shore to see the ships coming into harbour.

2. Return to Rome as quickly as possible, that you may help your friends.
3. Caesar resolved to place there the soldiers of the tenth legion, in order to have a guard as friendly as possible.
4. The farmer remained in the field the whole day, that nothing might be done in his absence.
5. I sent messengers and a letter, that I might inform Cicero of these things.
6. He left the city by night, that no one might see (him) setting out.
7. Let us depart quickly, in order to reach home before the ninth hour.
8. I wrote these things that you might console me.
9. Mirrors were invented that men might know themselves.
10. He fastened-down the rafts with four anchors apiece from the four corners, that they might not be moved by the waves.
11. To finish the business which we have undertaken there will be need of the greatest diligence.
12. Our fathers sent these (men) as settlers to Sinuessa, that this region might be safe from the Samnite foe.



1. The farmer will sow seeds in spring, that he may reap corn in autumn.
  2. The messenger set out at dawn, that no one might cut him off from return.
  3. We all obey the laws, in order to be free.
  4. Caius was sent to a distant land, that he might never do harm to the State.
  5. Wars must be undertaken that one may live in peace without disturbance.
  6. The boy and girl climbed the hill to fetch water.
  7. He was a chief who always conquered that he might spare the conquered.
  8. The general broke up the bridge over the river Rhine that the Germans might never cross over into Gaul.
  9. I came to London yesterday to see my friends.
  10. Cicero spoke thus in order to persuade the people that these things were true.
  11. Let them seek some other place of exile *than this* [hence], that nothing may disturb my peace with you.
  12. Caesar, some days having been spent in vain, in order not to lose the remainder of his time sets out from the city and arrives in further Gaul.
-

LXVII.

**Causal Clauses.**

**243**      3. Causal Clauses give a *reason*, and are introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *because*, *quoniam*, *quando*, *since*, with the Indicative :

Ego primam tollo nominor quia Leo. PHAEDR.  
*I take the first (share) because my name is Lion.*

or by *cum*, *since*, with the Conjunctive :

Quae cum ita sint, ab Jove veniam peto. CIC.  
*Since these things are so, I seek pardon of Jupiter.*

- 
1. The consul was unwilling to perform his duty, because he feared the *numbers* [multitude] of the enemy.
  2. Since these things have been done *against my will* [I being unwilling, abl. abs.], I shall return to the city.
  3. No one loves his native country because it is great, but because it is his own.
  4. He had been put to death *by* [ab] the state because he coveted the kingdom.
  5. Since you hold captive the leaders of the war, you ought to consider that all the forces of Catiline *have been overthrown* [concido].
  6. Cincinnatus was appointed dictator because the consul's camp was being besieged by the Aequi.
  7. He tried to attack the town *on* [ex] his way, because he heard that it was destitute of defenders.
  8. Many tell lies that they may deceive, many because they are deceived.
  9. Since these things are true, why do we now hesitate?
  10. The boy was sent home by his father because he had lost all his books.

11. The enemy fought keenly [S.P. 195], because all hope of safety consisted in valour *alone* [unus].
  12. Because, all crops being lost, there was nothing at home with which they might relieve hunger, he commanded their neighbours to *give* [make] them a supply of corn.
- 
1. I will help you willingly, because I understand that you have not forgotten former kindnesses.
  2. The fox was unwilling to enter the cave, because he feared the sick lion.
  3. He did that chiefly for the reason, that he did not wish the place whence the Helvetii had departed to be *empty* [vaco].
  4. Since I did not know what had been done in the senate, I begged the consul to inform me.
  5. Word have been invented because our will cannot be understood if we are silent [abl. abs.].
  6. Marcus set out for Spain because he feared that the citizens would kill him.
  7. Since the village was divided into two parts by the river, he granted one part to the Gauls (and) assigned the other to the cohorts.
  8. Since no opportunity will be given me of pleading my cause before the people, I shall go into exile.
  9. I admired him for this reason, that, regardless of favours, he had been mindful of his country.
  10. I have not yet done what you ordered, because I did not understand that you wished the work to be completed to-day.
  11. A tyrant is hateful because he is feared, and wishes to be feared because he is hateful.
  12. The cause of his sending Galba was that he wished the road through the Alps, by which merchants had been accustomed to go at great peril, to be made open.
-

## LXVIII.

## Temporal Clauses.

- 243     4. Temporal Clauses show the *time*, and are introduced by *ubi*, *ut*, *cum*, *quando*, *when*, *quotiens*, *as often as*, *dum*, *donec*, *while*, *until*, with the Indicative :

*Lituo Romulus regiones direxit tum cum urbem condidit. CIC.*  
*Romulus marked out the districts with a staff at the time when he founded the city.*

But in narrative *cum* is often used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Conjunctive :

*Cum ad oppidum venisset oppugnare instituit. CAES.*  
*When he had come to the town, he began to attack it.*

*Note.*—*Dum*, *while*, is used with the Present Indic. in speaking of Past Time: *Dum Romani consultant, Saguntum oppugnabatur, LIV., While the Romans were consulting, Saguntum was being besieged (see 430).*

- 
1. When they have come to the house, Dromo knocks (at) the doors.
  2. When the ships had touched the shore, the soldiers, having disembarked, fortified the camp.
  3. So long as you are [fut.] fortunate you will count many friends.
  4. When Varro arrived, Hostilius at once commanded one legion to attack the city.
  5. While these things were being *done* [gero] at Carthage, Saguntum was being attacked with the greatest violence.
  6. In the previous year Caius had gone to Asia; *on his arrival* [whither when he arrived] he learnt that his friends had already departed.
  7. When Caesar had arrived at the entrance of the woods, suddenly they dashed out from all parts of the wood.
  8. As often as he saw me he cried out that I alone had saved my country.
  9. The race of the Spartans was strong while the laws of Lycurgus flourished.

10. Then at last we *appreciate* [understand] our good things, when we have lost those which we had in our *possession* [power].
  11. When the ambassadors had explained these things, the senate decreed that the hostages should be surrendered [gerundive].
  12. When I was consul, I heard many things about the *great* [summus] dangers of the State, I asked many questions, I learnt many things.
- 

1. I was contending in arms for my country while you remained at home.
  2. When I learnt the trouble of the Syracusans, I exhorted them.
  3. While these things are being done at Antium, the Aequi take the citadel of Tusculum.
  4. He is most wretched who, when he desires to eat, has not (anything) which he can eat.
  5. When Caesar had ordered the soldiers to collect corn *for* [in acc.] the winter, he himself returned to Rome.
  6. While the fighting goes on in this manner, he advances slowly and gradually.
  7. Caius wrote many books at the time when he was living in Greece.
  8. As soon as they recognised the arms and the standards, at once the memory of their native land softened the anger of them-  
'all [dative].
  9. The battle has its end when the enemy lies-low.
  10. When I was in the camp at the river Pyramus, two letters from you were delivered to me at one time.
  11. Piso, when he *came to the aid of* [brought aid to] his brother (who was) hemmed in by the enemy, snatched him out of danger; he himself, as long as he could, bravely resisted.
  12. Yesterday, when I was nearly slain at my (own) house, I summoned the senate to the temple of Jupiter Stator.
-

## LXIX.

## Conditional Clauses.

**243** 5. Conditional Clauses are introduced by *si*, *nisi*, the Principal Sentence containing that which follows from the condition.

(1) The Indicative is used in the *si*-Clause and in the Principal Sentence, when the truth of the one statement depends on the truth of the other ; if one is a fact, the other is also a fact :

*Si vales, bene est. Cic.*

*If you are in good health, all is well.*

*Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebo gratiam. Cic.*

*If you shall have done what you offer, I shall be very grateful.*

*Note.*—The Future Simple is used in Latin where in English the Present is used with Future meaning. The Future Perfect expresses action to be completed in the future ; if two actions are spoken of, one of which will take place before the other, the prior one is in the Future Perfect.

(2) The Conjunctive is used both in the *si*-Clause and in the Principal Sentence when the condition is imaginary :

(a) The Present Conjunctive is used when the statements are thought of as possible, more or less probable :

*Si venias, gaudeam.*

*If you were to come, I should rejoice.*

(b) The Historic Conjunctive is used when the statements are purely imaginary ; when there is no possibility of their becoming actual :

*Si venisses, gavisus essem.*

*If you had come, I should have rejoiced.*

- 
1. If both the consuls have been defeated, a dictator must be appointed at once.

2. If all my friends leave Rome, I shall follow.
3. I will write more if I have more leisure.
4. If the State were grateful, it would rejoice.
5. If you were to undertake the business, I would *leave it* [permitto] to you; if you should be unwilling, I would do it.
6. We should have been defeated that day, *had not two legions* [unless two legions had] come to our aid (S.P. 147).
7. Whoever has once become known by shameful deceit, loses credit even if he speaks the truth.
8. Nothing will be discovered if we are contented with what has been discovered.
9. If these things were true, I should rejoice; since they are false, I am grieving.
10. If you had called him by-name, he would have answered.
11. Unless you had undertaken his case, he would never have withstood me.
12. If my slaves feared me *in the same manner* [isto pacto] that all your fellow-citizens fear you, I should think that I must leave my house.

- 
1. If you think that few are *concerned in* [affinis, dat.] this crime, you are greatly mistaken.
  2. Nothing will escape you if you read my letters carefully.
  3. If the enemy cross the river, the city will be taken (and) we shall all perish.
  4. If my friends had helped me at that time, I should not be an exile to-day.
  5. I will return within, if I find out from these men what I wish.
  6. If there were (good) faith in those men, we should not be suffering.
  7. If we are to fight [impers.], we must fight to-day.
  8. If Pompey were present now, all things would be changed; but they say that he is lingering in Asia.
  9. You would not have escaped their weapons if you had not betaken yourself to the weapons of Caesar.
  10. If anyone had told me this, I should have believed that he was jesting.
  11. If I were writing not to you but to Cicero, I should ask why he had spoken thus.
  12. If my counsels and influence had prevailed, you to-day would be in need, we should be free, the State would not have lost so many leaders and armies.

## LXX.

**Concessive and Comparative Clauses.**

243

6. Concessive Clauses concede or allow an objection to the statement in the Principal Sentence and are introduced : (1) by *etsi, etiamsi, even if, although*, with the Indicative, if something is granted as being true, with the Conjunctive if it is only granted for the sake of argument ; or (2) by *quamquam* with the Indicative ; or (3) by *quamvis* with the Conjunctive.

*Etiamsi tacent, satis dicunt. CIC.*

*Although they are silent, they say enough.*

*Etiamsi tacerent, satis dicerent.*

*Even if they were to be silent, they would say enough.*

*Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa. HOR.*

*Although you are in haste, the delay is not long.*

243

7. Comparative Clauses make an imaginary comparison, and are introduced by *quasi, tamquam, tamquam si, ut si, velut si, as if*, with the Conjunctive :

*Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fusti est ambulandum. PLAUT.*

*I must walk with a stick as if I were lame.*

- 
1. Although he has done this, the judges will acquit him.
  2. Even though he had slain his enemy, the judges would have acquitted him.
  3. Although they were deserted by their leader and by fortune, they nevertheless placed all hope of safety in bravery.
  4. Although you do not often make a mistake, you have made one in this matter.
  5. However fortunate you may be, you will not have everything you wish.
  6. Although the winters are early in these regions, Caesar nevertheless hastens to set forth into Britain.
  7. I shall follow good men, even though they fall.



8. The mistress of the house brought up the girl with great care, as if she had been her own daughter.
  9. Although *everything is* [all things are] *alarming* [gerundive of *metuo*], we fear nothing more than treachery.
  10. Panic seized the minds of all, just as if the enemy were at the gates of the city.
  11. Although they are burdened with debt, they wish to gain possession of *power* [affairs].
  12. Even though these things have been done with the greatest care nevertheless more [plur.] is yet to be done.
- 

1. I will not produce your letter, although I might lawfully do so.
  2. The messenger related the whole battle, as if he had taken part in it.
  3. Although I do not believe that this danger is to be feared, nevertheless I will send reinforcements for the consul.
  4. The Sequani trembled at the cruelty of Ariovistus when absent just as if he were present.
  5. Although the consul is very wise, I do not believe that he understands the cause of this revolt.
  6. Even if the consul were far wiser, he would not understand why the Gauls had revolted.
  7. I commend this man to you as if he were my freedman.
  8. Although you have suddenly *turned out* [*existo*] an enemy to me, yet I pity you because you have injured yourself.
  9. However much you may wish to go away, I beg of you to remain with me a few days.
  10. Our men retreated in pretended terror, as if they feared the enemy's cavalry.
  11. Although he is free from blame, yet he *is not free from* [does not lack] suspicion.
  12. Caesar, although he was called back into Italy by many and pressing affairs, had nevertheless determined not to abandon any part of the *operations* [war] in Spain.
-

## III. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

## LXXI.

**The Relative with the Conjunctive.**

**244**      The Relative often forms a Clause, Consecutive, Final, or Causal, with the Conjunctive, corresponding to the Adverbial Clauses of similar meaning :

**Qui** with the Conjunctive forms a Consecutive Clause, with the meaning of *such a kind that*, after—

(a) A Demonstrative.

(b) Indefinite or Interrogative Pronouns, and negatives, *nemo, nihil, nullus*.

(c) After impersonal *est, there is, sunt, there are* :

*Ea est Romana gens quae victa quiescere nesciat.* LIV.

*The Roman race is such that it knows not how to rest quiet under defeat.*

*Quis est cui non possit malum evenire?* CIC.

*Who is there to whom evil may not happen?*

*Sunt qui duos tantum in sacro monte creatos tribunos esse dicant.* LIV.

*There are who say that only two tribunes were elected on the sacred mount.*

**Qui** with the Conjunctive forms a Final Clause, *in order that* :

*Legatos misit qui pacem peterent.*

*He sent ambassadors to seek peace.*

**Qui** introduces a Causal Clause, and usually takes the Conjunctive :

*Miseret tui me qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* TER.

*I pity you for making this man your enemy.*

*Note.*—For the Relative with the Indicative see Ex. VII. and VIII.

1. The general sent messengers to announce to the senate that the Gauls had fled.

2. Who is there whom I may believe ?
  3. You were found *the only one* [unus] to wish to have a king.
  4. O wretched one, to speak so insolently in presence of such men !
  5. If the messenger goes away [fut.] to-morrow, there will be no one to whom I can entrust my letter.
  6. Caesar sends forward all the cavalry to see in what direction [pl.] the enemy are marching.
  7. There is no one in this city who does not fear you.
  8. Since all these things have been done by others, what remains *for me to do* [which I may do] ?
  9. Since the harbour is blockaded by the enemy's ships, there is no place whence we may set out for Spain.
  10. We sleep all the night, and there is hardly any in which we do not dream.
  11. There were (some) who believed that Licinius Crassus had not been ignorant of Catiline's plot.
  12. And indeed there was no one of them all with a spirit so careless and indolent as to rest on that night.
- 

1. What is there in this city which can now delight you ?
2. Not even one of all the slaves seemed to be trusty, so Cicero had no one *to send* [whom he might send].
3. There is no grief which length of time does not lessen and soften.
4. On receiving your letter I sent a most trusty man, *by whose means* [through whom] all these things might be accomplished.
5. If the fourth day hence does not suit you, choose some day on which we may go.
6. *Some assert* [there are who assert] that ambassadors should be sent to Caesar to put before him the will of the senate.
7. There was nothing which he did not himself attend-to and watch-over.
8. There are (some) present who exhort you to desert from us.
9. The lieutenant set fire to all the towns, that there might not be any place whither the enemy might fly for refuge.
10. After they had sustained this defeat, messengers were sent by the Britons to seek peace.
11. He did not suffer the tents to be pitched that day, in order that they might all be more ready for pursuit.
12. Caesar led his forces to the nearest hill and sent the cavalry to sustain the onset of the enemy.

## LXXII.

**Relative Clauses in Oratio Obliqua.**

**251**     In a Relative Clause dependent on a Clause in Oratio Obliqua, the Verb must be in the Conjunctive :

Romulus urbem condidit quae  
Roma appellatur.  
*Romulus founded the city  
which is called Rome.*

Narratur Romulum urbem condi-  
disse quae Roma appelletur.  
*It is related that Romulus founded  
the city which is called Rome.*

- 
1. I cannot believe that all things which you say are true.
  2. It was announced to the king that the ships which were carrying the cavalry had been wrecked.
  3. Therefore before anything should be attempted he ordered Divitiacus to be called to him.
  4. Piso the censor promises that he will go to Caesar, and so does Roscius the praetor, that they may instruct him about these things.
  5. Do not think, O Pompey, that this is the army which conquered Gaul and Germany.
  6. Curio said that it did not seem to him a *very fine* [praeclarus] thing to have gold, but to rule those who had gold.
  7. It was believed at Rome that the army which Minucius commanded had been defeated by the Aequi.
  8. Horatius said that he would intercept the onset of the enemy, as far as resistance could be made with one (man's) body.
  9. Liscus explains that our plans, and all that is done in the camp, are reported to the enemy by the same (persons).
  10. To these Caesar answered thus ; that he had less hesitation *on this account* [eo], because he kept in memory those things which the Helvetian ambassadors had related.
-

1. The comic poet says that nothing is said which has not been said before.
  2. The messenger said that he should soon finish the business he had undertaken.
  3. They say that an army which has already set out, will arrive in Gaul within seven days.
  4. When he was augur he dared to say that those things were carried on with the best auspices which were done for the safety of the State.
  5. I heard that Marcus, who had gone away to the country, would not return to the city.
  6. The leader said that he would not pardon the soldiers who had turned their backs in battle.
  7. We hoped that all things which he wished would be done.
  8. It was announced at Rome that the soldiers who were *on their way* [making a journey] to Asia would soon arrive *there* [thither].
  9. Considius says that the mountain which Caesar wished to be occupied by Labienus is held by the enemy; that he has learnt this from the arms and standards of the Gauls.
  10. The consul has promised that he will shortly restore the statues which have been taken away.
-

## LXXIII.

## Recapitulatory.

1. When these things have been heard, they all exclaim that the opportunity of carrying out the affair well is not to be lost.
  2. My brother will return to Rome next year, to perform his duty to the State.
  3. No one refused this labour, because they thought that it would be the end of all (their) labours.
  4. I do not know what the consul wishes, but, if I can [fut.], I will help him.
  5. There is a city which, because it was built last, is called Naples.
  6. Until the crops have been reaped the farmer will not enjoy rest.
  7. Such was the slowness of the work that neither by the former consuls nor by us was the image of Jupiter put-in-place.
  8. I shall send messengers to Rome to ask what the Senate has decreed about the prisoners.
  9. While they were enjoying [pres. pass. of *delecto*] magnificent banquets, they ran into debt.
  10. Sulla, if his own modesty and dignity did not avail him, sought no help.
  11. Although I entreated the consul to spare the conquered Gauls, he *would not* [*nolo*].
  12. This man will convey the messages you send [fut. perf.] to your father, nor can you send to him anyone whom he will believe more.
- 

1. Do not do this yourself, and warn your brother not to do it.
2. No one is so old that he does not think he can live a year.
3. He sent (men) to reconnoitre what was the nature of the mountain.
4. If I were about to go into Greece I would meet you at Athens, but I believe that Africa will be my province.
5. Messengers sent by my father met me while I was travelling through Campania.
6. Who is there to whom this common soil of our native land is not dear?

7. When you have returned [fut. perf.] from Tarentum, I will explain what you must do next.
8. They said that they had certain things which, by common consent, they wished to ask of him.
9. It is certain that those fields have been laid waste, but no one knows when, why, by whom, they were laid waste.
10. Do not ask me how the captives escaped from *prison* [chains]; I have promised to tell no one.
11. They called to mind that having endured the same things the previous year in Spain, they had *carried through* [conficio] a great war by toil and patience.
12. The Spaniards seeking peace were commanded [S. P. 195] to lay down their arms (and) to give a hundred hostages within three days.

## LXXIV.

### Recapitulatory.

1. Cicero said that he did not know for what reason the ambassadors had departed.
2. It was answered that Varro declared he would come to the discussion on the second day.
3. Domitius announces in the assembly that Pompey will quickly come to (their) aid, and exhorts them not to fail in courage.
4. When Caesar heard that the enemy had moved their camp, he ordered the cavalry to follow.
5. You did not leave *in my mind* [apud me] any doubt how much you loved me.
6. Although nothing is yet known about this matter, it is nevertheless believed at Rome that Pompey will be sent into Asia.
7. *When he asked* [to him asking] what I thought ought to be done, I replied that war ought to be declared without delay.
8. The Roman ambassador asked the Carthaginians whether they preferred peace or war.
9. Within a few days, *circumstances were so reversed* [so great a change was made in affairs] that our (men) were harassed by a great want of all necessary things, *the other side* [those] abounded in all things.

10. When soothsayers had assembled out of all Etruria, they said that slaughter and conflagration [pl.] were approaching.
  11. Even if I were timid, with your help, my Brutus, I should cast away all fear.
  12. They relate that Themistocles was driven from his native land which he had set free.
- 

1. When he had said these things, he betook himself to the praetorium.
2. *When the day dawned* [light having arisen], we saw that some of the ships had been wrecked (and) others had taken refuge in the harbour.
3. I have begged many of my friends to undertake the business, but they all say that they will not go with Caius for their leader.
4. Your Rufius was *as much* [so] missed as if he were one of [out of] ourselves.
5. All these things have been announced to Caesar, but we do not know what he is about to do.
6. He learns from them that there is a town not far from that place *in which* [whither] a large number of men and cattle have collected.
7. The danger is so great that I cannot leave Rome *without anxiety* [with tranquil mind].
8. There are (some) who, although *their opinion* [what they think] is excellent, yet dare not utter it from fear of ill-will.
9. The soldiers having been landed, the ships were sent back by Caesar to Brundisium the same night, in order that the remaining legions might be carried-across.
10. Pompey departs from that place with all his forces, in order not to be enclosed by the two armies.
11. Cincius told me that you were in Italy and that he was sending the boys to you.
12. The gladiators, although they are of a *higher* [better] spirit than part of the patricians, will nevertheless be restrained by our power.



# VOCABULARY

## ABBREVIATIONS

*S.P.*, Shorter Primer  
*subs.*, substantive  
*adj.*, adjective  
*v.*, verb  
*adv.*, adverb  
*prep.*, preposition  
*conj.*, conjunction  
*interj.*, interjection  
*m.*, masculine  
*f.*, feminine

*n.*, neuter  
*c.*, common  
*sing.*, singular  
*pl.*, plural  
*decl.*, declension  
*indecl.*, indeclinable  
*acc.*, accusative  
*gen.*, genitive  
*dat.*, dative  
*abl.*, ablative

*comp.*, comparative  
*superl.*, superlative  
 1, first conjugation  
 2, second "  
 3, third "  
 4, fourth "  
*trans.*, transitive  
*intrans.*, intransitive  
*dep.*, deponent  
*def.*, defective

abandon...re-linquo, -liqui, -lictum 3  
 abdicate...abdico 1; *to abdicate an office, se abdicare (with abl.)*  
 able, *to be able*...possum, potui, posse  
 abode...dom-us, -ūs, f.  
 abound...abundo 1  
 about (*prep.*)...de (*abl*)  
 abroad (*adv.*)...foris  
 absence, *in somebody's absence*...ali-quo absente  
 absent...absen-s, -tis; *to be absent, de-sum, -fui, -esse; ab-sum*  
 abstain...abs-tineo, -tinui, -tentum 2  
 abundance...copi-a, -ae, f.  
 abuse...ab-utor, -usus sum 3 *dep.*  
 accept...ac-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum 3  
 acceptable...grat-us, -a, -um  
 accidental...fortuit-us, -a, -um  
 accomplish...per-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3; conficio 3; assequor, assecutus sum 3 *dep.*  
 accord, *of one's own accord*...sua sponte  
 account, *on account of (prep.)...propter (acc.), ob (acc.)*  
 accurately...recte  
 accusation...crim-en, -inis, n.  
 accuse...accuso 1

accustom...adsuesco, -suevi, -suetum 3; *to be accustomed*...soleo, solitus sum 2; in-suesco, -suetus sum 3; consuesco 3  
 acquit...ab-solvo, -solvi, -solutum 3. (*S.P.* 168)  
 acre...juger-um, -i, n. (*plural like 3rd decl.*)  
 across (*prep.*)...trans (*acc.*), per (*acc.*)  
 act...act-um, -i, n.  
 active...impi-ger, -gra, -grum  
 add...ad-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 address (*v.*)...al-lequor, -locutus sum 3 *dep.*  
 adhere...ad-haereo, -haesi 2  
 adjoin...ad-jaceo, -jaciui 2  
 admire...miror 1 *dep.*; admiror 1 *dep.*  
 adopted...adoptiv-us, -a, -um  
 advance (*v.*)...pro-cedo, -cessi, -ces-sum 3; pro-gredior, -gressus sum 3 *dep.*  
 advise...suadeo, suasi, suasum 2. (*S.P.* 141)  
 affair...res, rei, f.; negoti-um, -i, n.  
 affirm...aio (*S.P.* 106)  
 after (*prep.*)...post (*acc.*)  
 after, afterwards (*adv.*)...post, postea

again...rursus, iterum  
 age (*period*)...aev-um, -i, *n.*  
 age (*time of life*)...aev-um, -i, *n.*;  
   aet-as, -atis, *f.*  
 age (*old age*)...senect-us, -utis, *f.*  
 age, of ripe age...matur-us, -a, -um  
 aid (*subs.*)...subsidi-um, -i, *n.*;  
   auxili-um, -i, *n.*  
 aid (*v.*), come to the aid of...suc-curro,  
   -curri, -cursum 3; subven-io, -i,  
   -tum 4  
 aim at...stud-eo, -ni 2 (*dat.*)  
 air...aer, aeris, *m.*; *acc. sing.*, aera  
 alarm (*v.*)...terr-eo, -ui, -itum 2;  
   perturbo 1  
 alas (*interj.*)...heu  
 alive...viv-us, -a, -um  
 all (*in quantity*)...omn-is, -e; (*in*  
   *number*)...omn-es, -ia  
 alliance...foed-us, -eris, *n.*  
 allot...part-ior, -itus sum 4 *dep.*  
 allow...per-mitto, -misi, -missum 3;  
   sino, sivi, situm; *it is allowed*...  
   licet 2 *impers.*  
 ally...soci-us, -i, *m.*  
 almost...prope, fere, paene  
 alone (*adj.*) only...sol-us, -a, -um;  
   un-us, -a, -um  
 alone (*adv.*)...solum  
 already...jam  
 also (*conj.*)...etiam, quoque  
 alter...muto 1  
 although (*conj.*)...quamquam, etsi,  
   quamvis. (*See Ex. LXX.*)  
 always...semper  
 ambassador...legat-us, -i, *m.*  
 ambushade...insidi-ae, -arum, *f. pl.*  
 amidst (*prep.*)...inter (*acc.*)  
 among (*prep.*)...inter (*acc.*)  
 anchor...ancor-a, -ae, *f.*; *weigh*  
   *anchor*...navem sol-vo, -vi, -utum;  
   ancoram tollo, sustuli, sublatum

ancient...vetus (*S.P.* 47); antiqu-us,  
   -a, -um  
 and...et, que, atque  
 anger...ir-a, -ae, *f.*  
 angry...irat-us, -a, -um  
 angry, get...irascor, iratus sum  
   3 *dep.*  
 animal...anim-al, -alis, *n.*  
 announce...nuntio 1; pronuntio 1  
 another...ali-us, -a, -ud; *another of*  
   *two*...alt-er, -era, -erum  
 answer (*subs.*)...respons-um, -i, *n.*  
 answer (*v.*)...re-spondeo, -spondi,  
   -sponsum 2  
 ant...formic-a, -ae, *f.*  
 any (*adj.*), any you please...quivis,  
   quaevs, quodvis. (*After a nega-*  
   *tive*)...ullus, -a, -um (*S.P.* 68,  
   69)  
 any one or thing (*pron.*)...quivis,  
   quaevs, quidvis; quilibet quae-  
   libet, quidlibet. (*After a negative*)  
   ...quisquam, quaequam, quidquam  
 anywhere (*after a negative*)...usquam  
 apart, be...di-sto, -stiti 1  
 ape...simi-us, -i, *m.*  
 apiece, *i.e.*, 'so many apiece'; (*use*  
   *distributive numeral, S.P.* 59)  
 appear...videor, visus sum 2 *dep.*  
 appearance...speci-es, -ei, *f.*  
 appearance, make one's...appar-eo,  
   -ui, -itum 2  
 apple...pom-um, -i, *n.*  
 appoint...dico, dixi, dictum 3;  
   nomino 1; creo 1  
 approach...ac-cedo, -cessi, -cessum  
   3; appropinquo 1  
 ardour...ard-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 arise...orior, ortus sum 4 *dep.*;  
   exorior  
 arm (*v.*)...armo 1  
 arms (*weapons*)...arm-a, -orum, *n.*

army...exercit-us, -ūs, *m.*; aci-es, -ei, *f.*  
 around (*prep.*)...circa, circum (*acc.*)  
 arrange...constitu-o, -i, -tum 3  
 arrival...advent-us, ūs, *m.*  
 arrive...ad-venio, -veni, -ventum 4;  
   pervenio  
 art...ars, artis, *f.*  
 artifice...artifici-um, -i, *n.*  
 as (*conj.*)...ut; as . . . as...tam . . .  
   quam; as much as...tantum . . .  
   quantum; as many as...tot . . .  
   quot; as long as, as far as...  
   quoad  
 ascend...ascend-o, -i, ascensum 3  
 ascertain...cog-nosco, -novi, -nitum 3  
 ashamed, be ashamed...pudet 2 *impers.*  
 aside, lay...de-pono, -posui, -positum  
   3  
 ask...rogo 1; interrogo 1; requi-ro,  
   -sivi, -situm 3; ask for...rogo 1;  
   oro 1; ask questions...quaero,  
   -sivi, -situm 3  
 assault (*subs.*)...impet-us, -ūs, *m.*;  
   oppugnati-o, -onis, *f.*  
 assault (*v.*)...oppugno 1  
 assemble, come together...convenio,  
   -veni, -ventum 4  
 assembly...conti-o, -onis, *f.*; concili-  
   um, -i, *n.*; comiti-um, -i, *n.*  
 assert...dico, dixi, dictum 3  
 assign...destino 1; attribu-o, -i,  
   -tum 3  
 assist...ad-juvo, -juvi, -jutum 1  
 assistance...auxili-um, -i, *n.*  
 astonished...attonit-us, -a, -um  
 at (*prep.*)...ad (*acc.*) (*also see*  
   *locative case, S.P. 14, 163*); at  
   *the house of (prep.)...apud (acc.)*  
 at last...denique  
 attack (*subs.*)...impet-us, ūs, *m.*; to

make an attack upon, impetum  
 facere in (*acc.*)  
 attack (*v.*)...aggredior, aggressus  
   sum 3 *dep.*; adior, adortus sum  
   4 *dep.*  
 attack, of places...oppugno 1;  
   signum infero (*dat.*), signum fero  
   in (*acc.*) (*carry the standard*  
   *against*)  
 attempt...conor 1 *dep.*  
 attend to...curo 1; ob-eo, -ivi, -itum;  
   servio 4  
 attention, pay attention to...studeo  
   2 (*dat.*); operam do, dedi (*dat.*)  
 augur...augur, -is, *c.*  
 auspices...auspici-a, -orum, *n. pl.*  
 autumn...aetumn-us, -i, *m.*  
 auxiliary troops...auxili-a, -orum, *n. pl.*  
 avail (*v.*)...pro-sum, -fui, prodesse  
   (*dat.*)  
 avarice...avariti-a, -ae, *f.*  
 avenge...ulciscor, ultus sum 3 *dep.*;  
   per-sequor, -secutus sum 3 *dep.*  
 avoid...vito 1  
 await...expecto 1 *acc. acc. acc.*  
 aware, to make some one aware of...  
   aliquem certiorum facere de  
 away, be...ab-sum, -fui, -esse; go  
   away...ab-eo, -ii, -ire  
 axe...secur-is, -is, *f.*  
 back...terg-um, -i, *n.*  
 back (*adv.*), backwards...rursus  
 bad...mal-us, -a, -um  
 bag...sacc-us, -i, *m.*  
 baggage...impediment-a, -orum, *n.*  
   (*S.P. 38*)  
 bail, go...spondeo, sponendi, spon-  
   sum 2  
 bait...esc-a, -ae, *f.*

banish...*civitate pello, pepuli, pulsum* 3; *to some place...relēgo* 1  
 bank...*riv-us, -i, m.*; *rip-a, -ae, f.*  
 banquet...*convivi-um, -i, n.*  
 barbarian...*barbar-us, -a, -um*  
 bare...*nud-us, -a, -um*  
 bark (*subs.*)...*cort-ex, -icis, m.*  
 bathe...*nato* 1  
 battering-ram...*arie-s, -tis, m.*  
 battle...*proeli-um, -i, n.*; *pugn-a, -ae, f.*; *join battle...proelium consero, -serui, -sertum* 3; *line of battle...aci-es, -ei, f.*  
 be...*sum, fui, esse*  
 beam...*trabs, trabis, f.*  
 bear (*v.*)...*fero, tuli, latum, ferre*; *to bear oneself...se gerere*  
 beardless...*imberb-is, -e*  
 beat...*verbero* 1; *be beaten...vapulo* 1  
 beautiful...*pulch-er, -ra, -rum*; *formos-us, -a, -um*; *amoen-us, -a, -um*  
 because (*conj.*)...*quod, quia*  
 become...*fio, factus sum* (*S.P.* 105)  
 bee...*ap-is, -is, f.*  
 befit...*deceat* 2 *impers.*  
 before, *in presence of* (*prep.*)...*coram* (*abl.*)  
 before (*prep.*)...*ante* (*acc.*)  
 before (*adv.*)...*ante, antea, prius*  
 before that (*conj.*)...*priusquam, antequam*  
 beg...*oro* 1; *beg for...effagito* 1  
 begin...*coepi* (*S.P.* 106); *in-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum* 3; *in-gredior, -gressus sum* 3  
 beginning...*initi-um, -i, n.*  
 behead...*secūri per-cutio, -cussi, -cussum* 3, *i.e. strike with an axe*  
 behind (*prep.*)...*post* (*acc.*)  
 behold...*ad-spicio, -spexi, -spectum* 3

believe...*ere-do, -didi, -ditum* 3; *arbitror* 1 *dep.*  
 belong...*pertineo* 2, *followed by ad*  
 below (*prep.*)...*infra* (*acc.*)  
 bend...*flecto, flexi, flexum* 3  
 beneficence...*beneficenti-a, -ae, f.*  
 benefit (*subs.*)...*benefici-um, -i, n.*  
 benefit (*v.*)...*bene-facio, -feci, -factum* (*dat.*); *prosum, profui, prodesse*  
 bent...*curv-us, -a, -um*  
 bequeath...*lēgo* 1  
 beseech...*oro* 1; *obsecro* 1  
 besiege...*ob-sideo, -sedi, sessum* 2  
 best (*superl. adj.*)...*See good*  
 betake (*oneself*)...*confero, contuli, collatum, conferre* (*se*)  
 better (*comp. adj.*)...*See good*  
 better (*comp. adv.*) (*S.P.* 56)...*melius*  
 between (*prep.*)...*inter* (*acc.*)  
 beware, *to*...*cavere* (*S.P.* 110)  
 beyond (*prep.*)...*trans* (*acc.*)  
 bid...*jubeo, jussi, jussum* 2  
 bind...*colligo* 1  
 bird...*av-is, -is, f.*; *voluer-is, -is, f.*  
 birth...*nat-us, -ūs, m.*  
 birthday...*dies natalis, m.*  
 bison...*ur-us, -i, m.*  
 bitter...*amar-us, -a, -um*; *acerb-us, -a, -um*  
 black...*nig-er, -ra, -rum*  
 blame (*subs.*)...*culp-a, -ae, f.*  
 blame (*v.*)...*culpo* 1  
 blind...*caec-us, -a, -um*  
 block...*impedio* 4  
 blockade...*ob-sideo, -sedi, -sessum* 2  
 blood...*sangu-is, -inis, m.*  
 body...*corp-us, -oris, n.*  
 bold...*aud-ax, -acis*; *be bold...anim esse*  
 boldly...*audacter*  
 boldness...*audaci-a, -ae, f.*  
 bone...*os, ossis, n.*

book...lib-er, -ri, *m.*  
 booty...praed-a, -ae, *f.*  
 borders (of a territory)...fines, *m. pl.*  
   (*S.P. 38*)  
 born, be...nascor, natus sum 3 *dep.*  
 both (*adj.*)...ambo (*S.P. 58*); both,  
   each of two...uterque (*S.P. 206*);  
   both . . . and...et . . . et  
 bottom, bottom of...imus (*adj. agreeing with subs.*)  
 bough...ram-us, -i, *m.*; frons, -dis, *f.*  
 bound (*subs.*)...salt-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 boundaries...fines, *m. pl.* (*S.P. 38*)  
 boundless...immens-us, -a, -um  
 bowl...pocul-um, -i, *n.*  
 boy...pu-er, -eri  
 boyhood...pueriti-a, -ae, *f.*  
 brave...fort-is, -e  
 bravely...fortiter  
 bravery...virt-us, -utis, *f.*  
 break, break into...frango, fregi,  
   fractum 3; break to pieces...  
   dissol-vo, -vi, -utum 3; break up  
   .. inter-rumpo, -rupi, -ruptum 3;  
   break out...e-rumpo, -rupi, ruptum  
 breast...pect-us, -oris, *n.*  
 bridge...pons, pontis, *m.*  
 briefly...brevis  
 bright...clar-us, -a, -um; illustr-is, -e  
 bright, be bright...niteo 2  
 bring...fero, tuli, latum, ferre (*S.P.*  
   101); comporto 1; bring to...  
   affero, attuli, allatum; bring up  
   the rear... agmen claudio, clausi,  
   clausum 3  
 broad...lat-us, -a, -um  
 brother...frater, fratris, *m.*  
 build...aedifico 1; build up...ex-  
   struo, -struxi, -structum 3; build  
   a temple...templum pono, posui,  
   positum 3  
 building...aedifici-um, -i, *n.*

bull...taur-us, -i, *m.*  
 bullock...bos, bovis, *c.*; juvenc-us,  
   -i, *m.*  
 burden (*subs.*)...onus, oneris, *n.*  
 burden (*v.*)...onero 1; premo, pressi,  
   pressum 3  
 burn (be burning)...ardeo, arsi 2;  
   flagro 1  
 business...negoti-um, -i, *n.*; res,  
   rei, *f.*  
 but (*conj.*)...sed, at, autem  
 buy...emo, ēmi, emptum 3  
 by (*prep.*)...a, ab (*abl.*)  
 by, by means of (*prep.*)...per (*acc.*)  
 by far...longe  
 calf...vitul-us, -i, *m.*  
 call...voco 1; appello 1; call to-  
   gether...convoco 1; call to mind  
   ..recordor 1 *dep.*; call back...  
   revoco 1  
 calm (*subs.*)...tranquillit-as, -atis, *f.*  
 calm (*adj.*)...aequ-us, -a, -um;  
   tranquill-us, -a, -um  
 camp...castra, *n. pl.* (*S.P. 38*); pitch  
   a camp...castra pono, posui, posi-  
   tum 3  
 can (*v.*)...possum, potui, posse  
 capital (*subs.*)...cap-ut, -itis, *n.*  
 capital (*adj.*), on a capital charge...  
   capitis (*gen. of caput, n., head*)  
 captive...captiv-us, -i, *m.*; take  
   captive...capio, cepi, captum 3  
 capture...capio, cepi, captum 3  
 care (*subs.*)...industri-a, -ae, *f.*;  
   diligenti-a, -ae, *f.*; cur-a, -ae, *f.*  
 care (*v.*), to take care...curo 1  
 carefully...diligenter  
 careless...negleg-ens, -entis; remis-  
   s-us, -a, -um  
 carry...porto 1; veho, vixi, vectum

- 3; *fero, tuli, latum, ferre*; *carry across...transporto* 1; *carry away...aufero, abstuli, ablatum auferre; deferō*; *carry on, carry out...gero, gessi, gestum* 3; *carry back...reporto* 1
- case...*caus-a, -ae, f.*
- cast...*jacio, jeci, jactum* 3; *cast away...ab-jicio, -jeci, -jectum* 3; *cast out...e-jicio, -jeci, -jectum* 3
- cat...*fel-is -is, f.*
- catch...*capio, cepi, captum* 3
- cattle...*pec-us, -oris, n. (S.P. 39)*
- cause...*caus-a, -ae, f.*
- caution...*prudenti-a, -ae, f.*
- cautious...*prud-ens, -entis*; *caut-us, -a, -um*
- cavalry...*equit-es, -um, m. pl.*; *equitat-us, -ūs, m.*
- cave...*spelunc-a, -ae, f.*; *antr-um, -i, n.*
- cease...*desino, desii* 3; *de-sisto, -stiti, -stitum* 3
- celestial...*caelest-is, -e*
- censor...*cens-or, -ōris, m.*
- centurion...*centuri-o, -onis, m.*
- certain, *sure*...*cert-us, -a, -um*
- certain, *a certain person or thing... quidam, quaedam quiddam (S.P. 68)*
- certainly...*certe*
- chain...*vincul-um, -i, n.*
- chance...*fortun-a, -ae*; *fors, fortis, f.*
- chance, *by*...*forte*
- change (*subs.*)...*mutati-o, -onis, f.*; *commutati-o, -onis, f.*
- change (*v.*)...*muto* 1
- character...*mores, morum, f. pl.*
- charge (*subs.*), *on a capital charge... capitis (gen. of caput)*
- charge...*cur-a, -ae, f.*; *put in charge of...prae-ficio, -fecī, -fectum* 3
- chariot...*curr-us, -i, m.*; *essed-um, -i, n.*
- cherish...*foveo, fovi, fotum* 2
- chest...*arc-a, ae, f.*
- chestnut...*castane-a, ae, f.*
- chief...*princeps, principis, c.*; *procer, -is, m.*; *dux, ducis, c.*
- chiefly...*maxime*
- children...*liber-i, -orum*; *nat-i, -orum*
- choose...*de-ligo, -legi, -lectum* 3
- circumstance...*res, rei, f.*
- citadel...*arx, arcis, f.*
- citizen...*civ-is, -is, c.*
- citizenship...*civit-as, -atis, f.*
- city...*urbs, urbis, f.*
- clamour...*clam-or -ōris, m.*
- clear (*adj.*)...*clar-us, -a, -um*; *tenu-is, -e*
- clear (*v.*)...*purgo* 1
- cleave...*findo, fidi, fissum* 3
- cliff...*scopul-um, -i, n.*
- climb...*ascen-do, -di, -sum* 3
- cloak...*sagul-um, -i, n.*
- close (*adj.*)...*proxim-us, -a, -um*
- close (*v.*)...*clau-do, -si, -sum* 3
- clothe...*vestio* 4; *indu-o, -i, -tum* 3
- clothing...*vest-is, -is, f.*
- club...*clav-a, -ae, f.*
- coast...*or-a, -ae, f.*
- cohort...*cohors, cohortis, f.*
- coin...*numm-us, -i, m. (gen. pl. nummum)*
- cold (*subs.*)...*frig-us, -oris, n.*
- cold (*adj.*)...*frigid-us, -a, -um*; (*of water*)...*gelid-us -a, -um*
- colleague...*colleg-a, -ae, m.*
- collect (*trans.*)...*col-ligo, -legi, -lectum* 3; *co-go, -ēgi, -actum* 3
- collect (*intrans.*)...*con-venio, -veni, -ventum* 4
- collision...*concur-sus, -ūs, m.*

- colony...*coloni-a*, -ae, *f.*; *plant a colony*...*coloniam deduco*  
 colour...*col-or*, -ōris, *m.*  
 column...*agm-en*, -inis, *n.*  
 combat...*pugn-a*, -ae, *f.*; *dimicati-o*, -onis, *f.*  
 come...*ven-io*, -i, -tum 4; *come to*...*ad-venio*; *come up to*...*pervenio*  
 comic...*comic-us*, -a, -um  
 coming (*subs.*)...*advent-us*, -ūs, *m.*  
 command (*subs.*)...*imper-i-um*, -i, *n.*; *juss-um*, -i, *n.*; *be in command of*...*prae-sum*, -fui, -esse; *place in command of*...*prae-ficio*, -feci, -fectum 3  
 command (*v.*)...*imper-o*, -avi, -atum 1; *jubeo*, *jussi*, *jussum* 2  
 commend...*mando* 1; *commendo* 1  
 commit...*mando* 1  
 common...*commun-is*, -e; *vulgar-is*, -e  
 companion...*com-es*, -itis, *c.*; *soci-us*, -i, *m.*  
 compare...*con-fero*, -tuli, *collatum*, *conferre*; *com-pono*, -posui, -positum 3  
 complain...*queror*, *questus sum* 3 *dep.*  
 complete (*v.*)...*per-ficio*, -feci, -fectum 3  
 comrade...*soci-us*, -i, *m.*; *com-es*, -itis, *c.*  
 conceal...*celo* 1  
 concern (*v.*)...*interest*, *impers.* (*S.P.* 192); *réfert*, *impers.* (*S.P.* 193)  
 concerning (*prep.*)...*de* (*abl.*)  
 conclude (*lit. strike an alliance or agreement*)...*ico*, *ici*, *ictum* 3  
 condemn...*condemno* 1; *damno* 1; *condemn to death*...*capitis damno*  
 condition, of peace...*lex*, *legis*, *f.*  
 conduct...*duco*, *duxi*, *ductum* 3  
 confer...*largior* 4 *dep. (dat.)*  
 conflagration...*incendi-um*, -i, *n.*  
 confusion...*tumult-us*, -ūs, *m.*; *per-turbati-o*, -onis, *f.*  
 confusion, throw into...*perturbo* 1  
 congratulate...*gratul-or*, -atus *sum*, 1 *dep. (dat.)*  
 conquer...*vinco*, *vici*, *victum* 3  
 consecrated...*sacrat-us*, -a, -um  
 consent (*subs.*)...*consens-us*, -ūs, *m.*  
 consider...*puto* 1; *arbitror* 1 *dep.*; *habeo* 2; *cogito* 1  
 consist...*con-sisto*, -stiti 3  
 consolation...*consolati-o*, -onis, *f.*; *solati-um*, -i, *n.*  
 console...*consolor* 1 *dep.*; *relevo* 1  
 conspiracy...*conjurati-o*, -onis, *f.*  
 constancy...*constanti-a*, -ae, *f.*  
 constellation...*sid-us*, -eris, *n.*  
 consul...*cons-ul*, -ulis, *m.*  
 consulship...*consulat-us*, -ūs, *m.*  
 consult...*consul-o*, -ui, -tum 3  
 consume...*con-sumo*, -sumpsi, -sumptum 3  
 contend...*conten-do*, -di, -tum 3; *certo* 1; *dimico* 1  
 contented...*content-us*, -a, -um  
 contest...*certam-en*, -inis, *n.*; *contenti-o*, -onis, *f.*  
 continent...*contin-ens*, -entis, *m.*  
 contingent...*auxili-um*, -i, *n.*  
 continuous...*perpetu-us*, -a, -um  
 contrary, on the...*contra* (*adv.*)  
 control (*v.*)...*ten-eo*, -ui, -tum 2  
 conversation...*serm-o*, -onis, *f.*  
 convey...*de-veho*, -vexi, -vectum 3; *per-fero*, -tuli, -latum, -ferre  
 copy (*v.*)...*de-scribo*, -scripsi, -scriptum 3  
 corn...*frument-um*, -i, *n.*; *fruges*, *f. pl.* (*S.P.* 40)

corner...angul-us, -i, *m.*  
 cost (*v.*)...sto, steti, statum 1;  
     consto, constiti; *cost much, little*  
     ...magno, parvo stare, constare  
 cottage...cas-a, -ae, *f.*  
 council...concili-um, -i, *n.*  
 counsel...consili-um, -i, *n.*; *take*  
     *counsel*, con-sulo, -sului, -sultum 3  
 count...numero, enumeratio 1  
 countless...innumerabil-is, -e  
 country...terr-a, -ae, *f.*; *as opposed*  
     *to town*...rus, ruris, *n.*; *one's*  
     *native land*...patri-a, -ae, *f.*  
 country folk...rustic-i, -orum  
 courage...virt-us, -utis, *f.*; anim-us,  
     -i, *m.*  
 course...curs-us, -ūs, *m.*; iter,  
     itineris, *n.*; *direct or bend one's*  
     *course*...iter ten-ēo, -ui, -tum 2  
 cover...tego, texi, tectum 3; operio,  
     operui, opertum 4  
 covet...appet-o, -ivi, -itum 3  
 cow...vacc-a, -ae, *f.*  
 cowardly...imbell-is, -e; *becowardly*  
     ...timoris esse  
 craft...fraus, fraudis, *f.*  
 create...creo 1  
 credit...fid-es, -ei, *f.*  
 crime...scel-us, -eris, *n.*; facin-us,  
     -oris, *n.*  
 criminal (*subs.*)...re-us, -i, *m.*  
 crocus...croc-us, -i, *m.*  
 crops...fruges, *f. pl.* (*S.P.* 40)  
 cross (*v.*), *cross over*...trans-eo, -ii,  
     -itum; tra-jicio, -jeci, -jectum 3  
 crowd...turb-a, -ae, *f.*; multitud-o,  
     -inis, *f.*  
 crown...coron-a, -ae, *f.*  
 cruel...saev-us, -a, -um  
 cruelty...crudelit-as, -atis, *f.*  
 cry (*subs.*)...clam-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 cry (*v.*)...clamo 1; exclamo 1

cultivate...col-o, -ui, cultum 3  
 curia...curi-a, -ae, *f.*  
 current, *whirling river*...vortico-  
     sus amnis  
 custom...consuetud-o, -inis, *f.*  
 cut...sec-o, -ui, -tum 1; *cut down*  
     ...caedo, cecidi, caesum 3; *cut off*  
     ...interclu-do, -si, -sum 3; cir-  
     cum-venio, -veni, -ventum 4

daily, *every day*...quotidie  
 dance (*subs.*)...chore-a, -ae, *f.*  
 dance (*v.*)...salto 1  
 danger...pericul-um, -i, *n.*  
 dare...audeo, ausus sum 2 *semi-*  
     *dep.*  
 dart...tel-um, -i, *n.*  
 dash out from...evolo 1  
 daughter...fili-a, -ae, *f.*; nat-a, -ae  
 dawn...prima lux  
 day...di-es, -ei, *m. and f. in sing.,*  
     *m. in pl.*; *midday*...meridi-es, -ei,  
     *m.*  
 day, *to-day (adv.)*...hodie  
 daybreak...prima lux  
 daylight...lux, lucis, *f.*  
 dead...mortu-us, -a, -um  
 dear...car-us, -a, -um; grat-us, -a,  
     -um  
 dear, *at a high price*...magni, magno;  
     *be dear*...magno stare  
 death...mors, mortis, *f.*  
 debt...aes (*see money*) alienum, *lit.*  
     *another person's money*; *run into*  
     *debt*...in aes alienum incido  
 deceit...fraus, fraudis, *f.*  
 deceive...fallo, fefelli, falsum 3;  
     de-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum 3  
 decemvir...decem-vir, -viri, *m.*  
 decide...de-cerno, -crevi, -cretum 3  
 decision...decret-um, -i, *n.*



declare...declaro 1; pro-fiteor, -fesus sum 2 *dep.*; declare war... bellum indico 3  
 decree (*subs.*)...edict-um, -i, *n.*  
 decree (*v.*)...de-fero, -feri, -fretum 3  
 dedicate...dedico 1; vo-veo, -vi, -tum 2  
 deed...fact-um, -i, *n.*; facin-us, -oris, *n.*  
 deem...puto 1  
 deep...alt-us, -a, -um  
 defeat (*subs.*)...clad-es, -is, *f.*  
 defeat (*v.*)...vinco, vici, victum 3  
 defence...praesidi-um, -i, *n.*; muniti-o, -onis, *f.*  
 defend...de-fendo, -fendi, -fensum 3  
 defender...defens-or, -oris, *m.*; vindex, -icis, *c.*  
 defer...differo, distuli, dilatam, differre  
 deity...num-en, -inis, *n.*  
 delay (*subs.*)...mor-a, -ae, *f.*; cunctati-o, -onis, *f.*  
 delay (*v.*)...cunctor 1 *dep.*; moror 1 *dep.*  
 delight (*v.*)...juvo, juvi, jutum 1; delecto 1  
 delightful...jucund-us, -a, -um  
 deliver, set free...libero 1; a letter or message...red-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 deliverance...sal-us, -utis, *f.*  
 demand...postulo 1; flagito 1  
 deny...nego 1  
 depart...dis-cedo, -ces-si, -cessum 3; abscedo; ab-eo, -ii, -itum (*S.P.* 102); depart from...exeo  
 desert...de-sero, -serui, -sertum 3; de-sum, -fui, -esse; de-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3  
 deserve...mereo 2; mereor 2 *dep.*  
 design...consili-um, -i, *n.*

desire (*subs.*)...cupid-o, -inis, *f.*; desider-i-um, -i, *n.*  
 desire (*v.*)...opto 1; cup-io, -ivi (*ii*) 3 (*S.P.* 98)  
 desirous...cupid-us, -a, -um; greedy, ap-petens, -petentis  
 despise...sperno, spreui, spretum 3  
 destine...destino 1  
 destitute...vacu-us, -a, -um  
 destroy...de-leo, -levi, -letum 2  
 determination...consili-um, -i, *n.*  
 determine...statu-o, -i, -tum 3; constitu-o, -i, -tum 3  
 dictator...dictat-or, -oris, *m.*  
 dictatorship...dictatur-a, -ae, *f.*  
 die...mori-or, mortuus sum 3 *dep.*; de-cedo, -cessi, -cessum 3  
 different...divers-us, -a, -um; vari-us, -a, -um  
 different, be...inter-sum, -fui, -esse  
 difficult...difficil-is, -e  
 difficulty...difficult-as, -atis, *f.*  
 dignity...dignit-as, -atis, *f.*  
 diligence...studi-um, -i, *n.*  
 dinner...cen-a, -ae, *f.*  
 direct (*v.*)...rego, rexi, rectum 3  
 direction...pars, partis, *f.*  
 directly...statim, extemplo  
 director...auct-or, -oris, *c.*  
 disagree...dis-sentio, -sensi, -sensum 4  
 disagreement...dissensi-o, -onis, *f.*  
 disaster...clad-es, -is, *f.*  
 discordant...disson-us, -a, -um  
 discover...reperio, repperi, reperi-tum, 4; in venio, -veni, -ventum 4  
 discussion...colloqui-um, -i, *n.*  
 disease...morb-us, -i, *m.*  
 disembark...navi egredior, egressus sum 3  
 disgraceful...turp-is, -e  
 dishonest...improb-us, -a, -um

- dishonesty...improbit-as, -atis, *f.*  
dishonour...dedec-us, -oris, *n.*  
dismiss...di-mitto, -misi, -missum 3  
disperse...fugo 1  
dispute...conten-do, -di, -tum 3  
dissatisfied, *be*...paenitet 2 *impers.*  
dissension...dissensi-o, -onis, *f.*  
distance...spati-um, -i, *n.*  
distant, *be distant from*...ab-sum, -fui, -esse  
distant (*adj.*)...longinqu-us, -a, -um  
distinguished...praeclar-us, -a, -um;  
excellens  
district...regi-o, -onis, *f.*; loc-us, -i, *m.* (*sometimes in the pl. n. loca, locorum*)  
disturb...violo 1; turbo 1; perturbo  
disturbance...injuri-a, -ae, *f.*  
disturbed...solic-it-us, -a, -um  
ditch...foss-a, -ae, *f.*  
divide...divi-do, -si, -sum 3  
divine...div-us, -a, -um  
division...pars, partis, *f.*  
do...facio, feci, factum 3; ago, ēgi, actum 3  
dog...can-is, -is, *m.*  
dominion...dominati-o, -onis, *f.*;  
imper-i-um, -i, *n.*  
donkey...asell-us, -i, *n.*  
door...port-a, -ae, *f.*  
doors...for-es, -um, *f.*  
doubt (*subs.*)...dubitati-o, -onis, *f.*  
doubt (*v.*)...dubito 1  
doubtful...dubi-us, -a, -um  
down from (*prep.*)...de (*abl.*)  
dowry...dos, dotis, *f.*  
drag...traho, traxi, tractum 3  
draw...traho, traxi, tractum 3;  
*draw a sword*...stringo, strinxi,  
strictum 3; *draw up (an army, &c.)*...in-struo, -struxi, -struc-tum 3  
dream (*subs.*)...somni-um, -i, *n.*  
dream (*v.*)...somnia 1  
drink...bib-o, -i, -itum 3  
drive...pello, pepuli, pulsum 3; per-fero, -tuli, -latum; *drive out*...ex-pello, -puli, -pulsum 3; *drive into*...compello; *drive back*...red-igo, -ēgi, -actum 3  
drop...o-mitto, -misi, -missum 3  
dry...sicc-us, -a, -um  
during (*prep.*)...per (*acc.*). *Also see S.P. 185*  
duty...offici-um, -i, *n.*  
dwelling (*subs.*)...aedifici-um, -i, *n.*;  
aed-es, -ium, *pl.* (*S.P. 38*)  
each...quisque; *each of two*...uter-que; (*answering the question, How many each? See S.P. 59*)  
eager...avid-us, -a, -um  
eagerly (*adv.*)...avide  
eagerness...studi-um, -i, *n.*; cupidit-as, -atis, *f.*  
eagle...aquil-a, -ae, *f.*  
early (*adj.*)...matur-us, -a, -um  
earth...terr-a, -ae, *f.*; hum-us, -i, *f.*  
ease...oti-um, -i, *n.*  
easily...facile  
east...ori-ens, -entis  
east-wind...Eur-us, -i, *m.*  
easy...facil-is, -e  
eat...edo, ēdi, ēsum, esse 3 (*S.P. 111*)  
effect...effect-us, ūs, *m.*  
eighth...octav-us, -a, -um  
eighty...octoginta  
either (*conj.*)...aut; vel; *either . . . or*...aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel  
elder...natu major  
elect...creo 1; e-ligo, -legi, -lectum 3  
elegance...eleganti-a, -ae, *f.*  
elephant...elephant-us, -i, *m.*

~~DE~~ DES PAIR = DESPERARE.

15

eleventh...undecim-us, -a, -um  
eloquence...eloquenti-a, -ae, f.  
else, *nothing else*...nihil aliud  
embarrass...impedio 4  
embassy...legati-o, -onis, f.  
emerald...smaragd-us, -i, c.  
employ...utor, usus sum 3 *dep.*  
empty...inan-is, -e; vacu-us, -a, -um  
emulate...aemul-or, -atus sum 1  
*dep.*  
encamp...con-sido, -sēdi, -sessum 3  
enclose...circum-cludo, -clusi, -clu-  
sum 3  
end...fin-is, -is, m.; *end of*...ex-  
tremus (*adj. agreeing with subs.*)  
endeavour (*v.*)...conor 1 *dep.*  
endowed...praedit-us, -a, -um (*abl.*)  
endurance...patienti-a, -ae, f.  
endure...tolero 1; patior, passus  
sum 3 *dep.*; per-petior, -pessus  
sum 3 *dep.*  
enemy...host-is, -is, m. (*when used*  
*of the enemy in battle, usually*  
*plural*)  
energetic...strenu-us, -a, -um; im-  
pi-ger, -gra, -grum  
engage, *in battle*...proelium conser-o,  
-ui, -tum 3  
enjoy...fruur, fructus sum 3 *dep.*  
(*abl.*)  
enlist...con-scribo, -scripsi, -scrip-  
tum 3  
enough...satis  
enquire...quaer-o, -sivi, -situm 3  
enrol...con-scribo, -scripsi, -scrip-  
tum 3  
ensue...sequor, secutus sum 3 *dep.*;  
in-cedo, -cessi, -cessum 3  
entangle...impedio 4  
enter...intro 1; in-eo, -ii, -ire; in-  
tervenio 4; in-gredior, -gressus  
sum 3 *dep.*

entrance...adit-us, -ūs, m.; initi-  
um, -i, n.  
entreat...supplico 1; obsecro 1  
entrench...com-munio 4  
entrust...mando 1; com-mitto, -misi,  
-missum 3  
envy (*v.*)...in-video, -vidi, -visum, 2  
(*dat.*)  
equal...par, paris; aequ-us, -a, -um  
equally...pariter, aequē  
equestrian...eques-ter, -tris, -tre  
erect...constitu-o, -i, -tum 3  
err...erro 1  
escape...ef-fugio, -fugi, -fugitum 3;  
e-vado, -vasi, -vasum 3  
especially...praecipue  
establish...confirmo 1  
estate...fund-us, -i, m.; ager, agri, m.  
evade...e-vado, -vasi, -vasum 3;  
e-ludo, -ludi, -lusum 3  
even (*conj.*)...quidem, etiam; *even*  
*if, though*...etsi, etiamsi  
event...event-us, -ūs, m.  
ever...umquam  
everlasting...sempitern-us, -a, -um  
every...omnis, omne; *everyone* =  
*all (men)*...omnes, m.; *everything*  
= *all (things)*...omnia, n.  
evident...manifest-us, -a, -um  
evident (*be*)...appareo 2  
evil...mal-us, -a, -um  
example...exempl-um, -i, n.  
exceed...supero 1  
exceedingly...vementer  
excellent...prae-stans, -stantis; op-  
tim-us, -a, -um  
except (*prep.*)...praeter (*acc.*)  
exclaim...clamo 1; conclamo 1  
exhort...hortor 1 *dep.*; cohortor  
exile (*banishment*)...exili-um, -i, n.  
*an exiled person*...ex-sul, -sulis, c.  
exile (*be in exile*)...exsulo 1

exist...ex-sisto, -stiti, -stitum 3  
 expect...exspecto 1  
 experienced...perit-us, -a, -um  
 explain...demonstro 1; ex-pono,  
 -posui, -positum 3  
 exposed to...obnoxi-us, -a, -um  
 eye...ocul-us, -i, m.

*face...vult-us, -ūs, m.*  
*fact...res, rei, f.*  
 fail...de-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3; de-  
 sum, -fui, -esse  
 faith...fid-es, -ei, f.  
 faithful...fid-us, -a, -um; fidel-is, -e  
 faithfulness...fid-es, -ei, f.  
 faithless...perfid-us, -a, -um  
 fall (subs.)...occas-us, -ūs, m.  
 fall (v.)...cado, cecidi, casum 3; ruo,  
 rui, rutum or ruitum 3  
 fall (be allotted to someone)...e-venio,  
 -veni, -ventum 4  
 false...fals-us, -a, -um  
 falsehood...mendaci-um, -i, n.; tell  
 a falsehood...mentior, mentitus  
 sum 4 dep.  
 famous...clar-us, -a, -um; prae-  
 clarus  
 far...procul, longe, comp. longius,  
 superl. longissime; by far...longe  
 farewell...vale! valet!  
 farmer...agricol-a, -ae, m.  
 fasten down...destino 1  
 fate...fat-um, -i, n.  
 father...pater, patris, m.  
 father-in-law...socer, soceri, m.  
 fatherland...patri-a, -ae, f.  
 fatigue (v.)...fatigo 1  
 fatigued...fess-us, -a, -um; defessus  
 fault...culp-a, -ae, f.; viti-um, -i, n.  
 favour...grati-a, -ae, f.  
 favourable...secund-us, -a, -um

fear (subs.)...met-us, -ūs, f.; tim-or,  
 -ōris, m.; to have fear...timoris  
 esse  
 fear (v.)...met-uo, -ui 3; timeo 2;  
 vereor, veritus sum 2 dep.  
 feast...convivi-um, -i, n.  
 feed (trans.)...pasco, pavi, pastum 3;  
 alo, alui, alitum 3; (intrans.) pas-  
 cor, pastus sum 3 dep.; feed on...  
 vescor 3 dep.; utor, usus sum 3 dep  
 feel...sentio, sensi, sensum 4  
 feeling...anim-us, -i, m.  
 fellow citizen...civ-is, -is, m.  
 festal...fest-us, -a, -um  
 fetch...quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum 3  
 few...pauc-i, -ae, -a  
 field...ager, agri, m.; arv-um, -i n.  
 fierce...fer-ox, -ōcis; torv-us, -a, -um  
 (S.P. 46)  
 fierce (of a fight or action)...atr-ox,  
 -ōcis  
 fifteen...quindecim  
 fifty...quingenta  
 fight (v.)...pugno 1; certo 1; dimico 1  
 fighting...bell-um, -i, n.  
 fill...impl-eo, -evi, -etum 2  
 find...in-venio, -veni, -ventum 4;  
 find out...cog-nosco, -novi, -nitum  
 3; exquae-ro, -sivi, -situm  
 fine (adj.)...seren-us, -a, -um  
 finish...con-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3;  
 per-ago, -ēgi, -actum 3  
 fire...ign-is, -is, m.  
 fire (be on)...ardeo, arsi 2; set on fire  
 ...in-cendo, -cendi, -censum 3  
 first (adj.)...prim-us, -a, -um; first  
 day of the month, the calends...  
 Kalend-ae, -arum, f. pl.  
 first (adv.)...primo, primum  
 firstfruits...primiti-ae, -arum, f. pl.  
 fit...apt-us, -a, -um  
 five...quinque

five o'clock...hora undecima, *lit.*  
*eleventh hour*  
 flattering...bland-us, -a, -um  
 flee...fug-io, -i, -itum 3; confugio  
 fleet...class-is, -is, *f.*  
 flesh...caro, carnis, *f.*  
 flight...fug-a, -ae, *f.*; *put to flight...*  
*in fugam dare*  
 fling, at...im-mitto, -misi, -misum 3  
 flint...sil-ex, -icis, *f.*  
 flock...grex, gregis, *m.*  
 flourish...vig-eo, -ui 2 *intrans.*;  
*flor-eo, -ui 2 intrans.*  
 flow...fluo, fluxi, fluxum 3; *flow*  
*into...in-fluo*  
 flower...flos, flōris, *m.*  
 fly...volo 1  
 foe...inimic-us, -i, *m.*  
 follow...sequor, secutus sum 3 *dep.*;  
*follow after...subsequor*  
 following...in-sequens, -sequentis;  
*poster-us, -a, -um*  
 folly...stultiti-a, -ae, *f.*  
 fond...amans, amantis  
 food...cib-us, -i, *m.*  
 fool...stult-us, -i, *m.*  
 foolish...stult-us, -a, -um  
 foot...pes, pedis, *m.*  
 footprint...vestigi-um, -i, *n.*  
 for (*prep.*), *on behalf of...*pro (*abl.*)  
 for (*conj.*)...nam, enim  
 forage...frumentor 1 *dep.*  
 force...vis, *f.*; *pl. vires (S.P. 28*  
*note)*  
 forces, soldiers...copi-ae, -arum, *f.*  
 ford...vad-um, -i, *n.*  
 foreign...peregrin-us, -a, -um; alien-  
 us, -a, -um  
 foreigner...peregrin-us, -i, *m.*  
 foremost...prim-us, -a, -um  
 foresee...pro-vido, -vidi, -visum 2  
 forest...silv-a, -ae, *f.*

forget...obliviscor, oblitus sum 3  
 forgetful...immem-or, -oris; oblit-us,  
 -a, -um  
 forgive...ig-nosco, -novi, -notum 3  
 form (*subs.*)...speci-es, -ei, *f.*  
 form (*v.*), *make...*facio, feci, factum 3  
 former...pri-or, -ōris; superi-or,  
 -ōris; pristin-us, -a, -um  
 formerly...olim  
 forsooth...scilicet, quidem  
 forthwith (*adv.*)...protinus  
 fortification...muniti-o, -onis, *f.*  
 fortify...munio 4  
 fortunate...fel-ix, -icis  
 fortune...fortun-a, -ae, *f.*  
 forty...quadraginta  
 forum...for-um, -i, *n.*  
 forward, *send forward...*prae-mitto,  
 -misi, -misum 3  
 found...con-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 founder...condit-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 fountain...fons, fontis, *m.*  
 four...quattuor; *four times...*quater  
 fourth...quart-us, -a, -um  
 fox...vulp-es, -is, *m.*  
 free (*adj.*)...lib-er, -era, -erum; *free*  
*from...*vacu-us, -a, -um; solut-us,  
 -a, -um  
 free (*v.*), *set free...*libero 1; exu-o,  
 -i, -tum 3  
 freedman...libert-us, -i, *m.*  
 freedom...libert-as, -atis, *f.*  
 freely...libenter  
 frequent...creb-er, -ra, -rum  
 frequently...crebro  
 fretful...moros-us, -a, -um  
 friend...amic-us, -i, *m.*; familiaris,  
 -is  
 friendly...amic-us, -a, -um  
 friendship...amiciti-a, -ae, *f.*  
 frighten...terreo 2; territo 1; *be*  
*frightened...*paveo, pavi, 2*intrans.*

frightful...horrid-us, -a, -um  
 frog...ran-a, -ae, f.  
 from (*prep.*)...ab (*abl.*), ex (*abl.*);  
     down from...de (*abl.*)  
 frost...frig-us, -oris, *n.*; gel-u, -us,  
     *n.*; pruin-a, -ae, f.  
 fruit...fruct-us, -ūs, *m.*; frug-es,  
     -um, *f. pl.*  
 fruitful...uber, -is; frugif-er, -era,  
     -erum  
 fugitive (*subs.*)...fugitiv-us, -i, *m.*;  
     profug-us, -i, *m.*  
 full...plen-us, -a, -um  
 funeral pile...rog-us, -i, *m.*  
 further (*adv.*)...longius  
 furthest...ultim-us, -a, -um; extrem-  
     -us, -a, -um  
 fury...fur-or, -ōris, *m.*; iracundi-a,  
     -ae, *f.*

gain (*v.*)...acqui-ro, -sivi, -situm 3  
 gain possession of...potior 4 *dep.*  
 game...lud-us, -i, *m.*  
 garden...hort-us, -i, *m.*  
 garrison...praesidi-um, -i, *n.*  
 gate...port-a, -ae, *f.*  
 gather...carp-o, -si, -tum 3  
 gem...gemm-a, -ae, *f.*  
 general...imperat-or, -oris, *m.*; dux,  
     ducis, *c.*  
 gift...don-um, -i, *n.*  
 girl...puell-a, -ae, *f.*  
 give...do, dedi, datum, dare; give  
     back...red-do, -didi, -ditum 3;  
     give way...cedo, cessi, cessum 3  
 gladiator...gladiat-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 gleam...mic-o, -ui 1  
 glisten...niteo 2  
 glitter...mic-o, -ui 1; luceo, luxi 2  
 glorious...praeclar-us, -a, -um  
 glory...glori-a, -ae, *f.*

go...eo, ivi, itum, ire; go down...  
     subeo; de-scendo, -scendi, -scen-  
     sum 3; go away...ab-eo; go out...  
     ex-eo; ex-cedo, -cessi, -cessum 3  
 goat (*she*)...capell-a, -ae, *f.*  
 god...de-us, -i *m.* (*S.P.* 19)  
 goddess...de-a, -ae, *f.* (*S.P.* 18)  
 gold...aur-um, -i, *n.*  
 golden...aure-us, -a, -um  
 good...bon-us, -a, -um; *comp.* melior,  
     *superl.* optimus (*S.P.* 51)  
 good, do good...bene-facio, -feci,  
     -factum 3; pro-sum, -fui, -desse  
 goodness...bonit-as, -atis, *f.*  
 govern...impero 1 (*dat.*); imperito 1  
 government...imperi-um, -i, *n.*  
 governor...praefect-us, -i, *m.*  
 gradually...paullatim  
 grandfather...av-us, -i, *m.*  
 grant...con-cedo, -cessi, -cessum 3  
 grape...uv-a, -ae, *f.*  
 grass...herb-a, -ae, *f.*; gram-en,  
     -inis, *n.*  
 grateful...grat-us, -a, -um  
 gratitude...grati-a, -ae, *f.*  
 great...magn-us, -a, -um; *comp.*  
     major, *superl.* maximus (*S.P.* 51);  
     how great (*interrog.*)...quantus?;  
     so great, as great...tantus, quantus  
 greatly...magnopere; *comp.* magis,  
     *superl.* maxime  
 greedy...avid-us, -a, -um  
 green...virid-is, -e  
 greet...salutem dico (*dat.*)  
 grief...dol-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 grieve...doleo 2  
 groan, groan at...ingem-o, -ui 3  
 ground...sol-um, -i, *n.*  
 grove...nem-us, -oris, *n.*; luc-us, -i, *m.*  
 grow...creasco, crevi, cretum 3  
 guard (*subs.*)...praesidi-um, -i, *n.*;  
     be on guard...in stationibus esse

guard (v.)...custodio 4; servo 1;  
tu-eor, -itus sum 2 *dep.*

guardian...cust-os, -ōdis, c.

guest...hosp-es, -itis, c

guide...dux, ducis, c.

hail (v.)...saluto 1

hail!...salve

half...dimidi-us, -a, -um

halt...sub-sisto, -stiti 3

hand (*subs.*)...man-us, -ūs, f.; *right*  
hand...dextra; *left hand*...sinis-  
tra; *hand to hand*...comminus

hand, be at...ad-sum, -fui, -esse

happen, it happens...accidit, evenit,  
fit

happily...beate

happy...beat-us, -a, -um; fel-ix,  
-icis

harass...vexo 1; conficito 1

harbour...port-us, -ūs, m.

hard, dur-us, -a, um; *difficult*...diffi-  
cil-is, -e

hardly...aegre

hare...lep-us, -oris, m.

harm (v.)...noceo 2 (*dat.*); *do harm*  
...male-facio, -feci, -factum 3 (*dat.*)

harp...lyr-a, -ae, f.

harry (v.)...vexo 1

haste, make haste...festino 1

hasten...conten-do, -di, -tum 3;  
maturo 1

hate (v.)...odi, *def.* (*S.P.* 106)

hateful...odios-us, -a, -um; invis-us,  
-a, -um

haul up (*of ships*)...sub-duco, -duxi,  
-ductum 3

have...habeo 2

he...is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud

head...cap-ut, -itis, n.

health...sal-us, -ūtis, f.

hear...audio 4

heart...cor, cordis, n.; pect-us,  
-oris, n.

heat...cal-or, -ōris, m.

heavily...graviter

heavy...grav-is, -e

heedless...negli-gens, -gentis

heinous...nefari-us, -a, -um

heir...her-es, -ēdis, c.

helm...clav-us, -i, m.

help (*subs.*)...auxili-um, -i, n.; opem,  
f. acc. (*S.P.* 40)

help (v.)...subven-io, -i, -tum 4  
(*dat.*); ad-juvo, -juvi, -jutum 1;  
suc-curro, -curri, -cursum 3; *be*  
*a help*...praesto sum, fui, esse  
hem, *hem in*...inter-cludo, -clusi,  
-clusum 3

hence...hinc

herald...nunti-us, -i, m.

herb...herb-a, -ae, f.

here...hic

hesitate...dubito 1

hesitation...dubitati-o, -onis, f.

hide...celo 1; ab-do, -didi, -ditum 3

high...alt-us, -a, -um; sublim-is, -e;  
ardu-us, -a, -um

highest, greatest...summ-us, -a, -um

highly, greatly...maxime

hill...coll-is, -is; mons, montis, m.

hillock...tumul-us, -i, m.

hindrance...impediment-um, -i, n.

history...histori-a, -ae, f.

hither...huc

hitherto...adhuc

hold...ten-eo, -ui, -tum 2; habeo 2;  
*hold back*...contin-eo, -ui, conten-  
tum 2

holidays...feri-ae, -arum, f. *pl.*

hollow...cav-us, -a, -um; inan-is, -e

home...dom-us, -ūs, f. (*S.P.* 34); *at*  
*home*...domi

honest...prob-us, -a, -um  
 honour (*subs.*)...hon-or, -ōris, *m.*;  
     dec-us, -oris, *n.*; fid-es, -ei, *f.*  
 honour (*v.*)...col-o, -ui, cultum 3  
 hope (*subs.*)...spes, spei, *f.*  
 hope (*v.*), or hope for...spero 1  
 horn...corn-u, -us, *n.*  
 horse...equ-us, -i, *m.*  
 horse, master of the horse...magister  
     equitum  
 horse soldier...equ-es, -itis, *m.*  
 hospitality...hospiti-um, -i, *n.*  
 host...hosp-es, -itis, *m.*  
 host (*crowd*)...multitud-o, -inis, *f.*  
 hostage...obs-es, -idis, *c.*  
 hostile...infest-us, -a, -um; infens-  
     us, -a, -um  
 hour...hor-a, -ae, *f.*  
 house...dom-us, -ūs, *f.* (*S.P.* 34); aed-  
     es, -ium, *f. pl.*; at the house of...  
     apud, *prep.* (*acc.*)  
 how (*adv.*), in what manner...quo-  
     modo; qualifying *adj.* or *adv.*,  
     quam; how great...quant-us, -a,  
     -um; how many...quot  
 however (*conj.*)...tamen, quamquam,  
     quamvis (*see Ex. LXX.*)  
 huge...in-gens, -gentis  
 human...human-us, -a, -um  
 hundred...centum (*indecl.*); for  
     hundreds *see S.P.* 59  
 hunger...fam-es, -is, *f.*  
 hunt...venor 1 *dep.*  
 hunter...venat-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 hurry (*trans.*)...rap-io, -ui, -tum 3  
 hurt...lae-do, -si, -sum (*trans.*) 3;  
     noceo 2 (*dat.*)  
 husband...vir, viri, *m.*; conj-ux,  
     -ugis, *c.*  
 I...ego (*S.P.* 92)  
 ides...Id-us, -uum, *f.* (*see note*)

idle...ignav-us, -a, -um  
 if (*conj.*)...si; even if...etsi, etiam-  
     si  
 ignorant...ignar-us, -a, -um  
 ignorant, be ignorant of...ignoro 1  
 ignore...ignoro 1  
 ill (*subs.*)...mal-um, -i, *n.*  
 ill, to do...male-facio, -feci, -factum  
     3 (*dat.*)  
 ill-will...invidi-a, -ae, *f.*  
 illustrious...clar-us, -a, -um  
 image...simulacr-um, -i, *n.*; imag-o,  
     -inis, *f.*  
 immediately...statim, extemplo  
 immense...in-gens, -gentis; im-  
     mens-us, -a, -um  
 immortal...immortal-is, -e  
 impel...urgeo 2; im-pello, -puli,  
     -pulsum 3  
 impenetrable...impedit-us, -a, -um  
 implore...implo-ro 1  
 import...importo 1  
 importance...moment-um, -i, *n.*  
 imprisoned...capt-us, -a, -um  
 impudent...impud-ens, -entis  
 in (*prep.*)...in (*abl.*)  
 incite...arcess-o, -ivi, -itum 3; acu-o,  
     -i, -tum 3  
 increase (*trans.*), make greater...  
     augeo, auxi, auctum 2  
 increase (*intrans.*), grow greater...  
     cresco, crevi, cretum 3  
 indebted, be...gratiam debeo  
 indeed (*adv.*)...quidem  
 individuals...singul-i, -ae, -a  
 indolent...segn-is, -e; languid-us,  
     -a, -um  
 indoors (*with motion*)...intro  
 industrious...dili-gens, -gentis  
 infantry (*subs.*)...pedit-es, -um, *m.*  
     *pl.*; peditat-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 infantry (*adj.*)...pedestr-is, -e



inferior...inferi-or, -ōris, *compar. of*  
inferas

infernal...infern-us, -a, -um

inflamm...ac-cendo, -cendi, -censum 3

influence...auctorit-as, -atis, *f.*

inform, to inform someone...ali-  
quem certiore facere

inhabit...habito 1

inhabitant...incol-a, -ae, *c.*

injure...noceo 2 (*dat.*); lae-do, -si,  
-sum 3 (*trans.*)

injury, a wrong...injuri-a, -ae, *f.*

injury, harm, hurt...mal-um, -i, .

insecure...insecur-us, -a, -um; in-  
fest-us, -a, -um

insolence...insolenti-a, -ae, *f.*

insolently...impudenter

inspect...in-spicio, -spexi, -spectum 3

instead of (*prep.*)...pro (*abl.*)

instigate...incito 1

instigator...auct-or, -ōris, *c.*

instruct...doc-eo, -ui, -tum 2

intelligence...ingeni-um, -i, *n.*

intercept...ex-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum 3

interrupt...dir-imo, -emi, -emptum 3

interval...intervall-um, -i, *n.*

into...in (*acc.*)

invade...in-vado, -vasi, -vasum 3;  
bellum inferre in (*acc.*)

invent...in-venio, -veni, -ventum 4;  
reperio, repperi, repertum 4

irritate...irrito 1

island...insul-a, -ae, *f.*

isthmus...isthm-us, -i, *m.*

javelin...pil-um, -i; jacul-um, -i, *n.*

jest (*v.*)...jocor 1 *dep.*

join...jun-go, -xi, -ctum 3

journey (*subs.*)...it-er, -ineris, *n.*;  
vi-a, -ae, *f.*

journey (*v.*)...iter facio

judge (*subs.*)...jud-ex, -icis, *m.*

judge (*v.*)...judico 1

judgment...judici-um, -i, *n.*

just...aequ-us, -a, -um

justice...justiti-a, -ae, *f.*

justly...honeste

keenly...acriter

keep...ten-eo, -ui, -tum 2; keep  
away...arceo, arcui, arcum 2

kid...capell-a, -ae, *f.*

kill...occi-do, -di, -sum 3; inter-ficio,  
-feci, -fectum 3; neco 1

kind, of what kind?...qualis; of  
such kind...talis

kindle...incen-do, -di, -sum 3

kindness, a kind action...benefici-  
um, -i, *n.*

kindness, of heart...benignit-as,  
-atis, *f.*

king...rex, regis, *m.*

kingdom...regn-um, -i, *n.*

kingly...regi-us, -a, -um; regar-is, -e

kinsman...affin-is, -is, *c.*

knock, at a door...pulto 1

know...sci-o, -vi, -tum 4; know not  
...nesci-o, -vi, -tum 4

knowledge...scienti-a, -ae, *f.*

known, it is well...constat, impers.;  
become known...innot-escio, -ui 3

labour...lab-or, -ōris, *m.*

lack (*v.*)...careo 2; eg-eo, -ui, 2 (*abl.*)

laden...onust-us, -a, -um

lake...lac-us, -ūs, *m.*

lamb...agn-us, -i, *m.*

lament...doleo 2; ploro 1

lamentable...luctuos-us, -a, -um

lamentation...luct-us, -ūs, *m.*

land (*subs.*)...terr-a, -ae, *f.*; tell-us,  
-uris, *n.*; ager, agri, *m.*; native

land...patri-a, -ae, *f.*

- land (v.)...**ex-pono, -posui, -positum** 3  
 language...**lingu-a, -ae, f.**  
 large...**magn-us, -a, -um; comp.**  
     **major, superl. maximus (S.P. 51);**  
     **ampl-us, -a, -um**  
 lark...**alaud-a, -ae, f.**  
 last (see later)...**postrem-us, -a, -um**  
     **(S.P. 54)**  
 last, at, at length (adv.)...**tandem;**  
     **for the last time...postremum**  
 lastly...**postremo**  
 late...**ser-us, -a, -um; tard-us,**  
     **-um**  
 later...**posterior (S.P. 54)**  
 laurel (tree)...**laur-us, -i, f.**  
 law...**lex, legis, f.; jus, juris, n.;**  
     **to lay down laws...ponere leges**  
 lawful, it is...**licet 2 impers.**  
 lawfully.. **jure**  
 lay...**pono, posui, positum 3; lay**  
     **down, or aside...depono, lay bare**  
     **...pate-facio, -feci, -factum 3; lay**  
     **waste...populor 1 dep.; vasto 1**  
 lead...**duco, duxi, ductum 3; lead**  
     **across...transduco; lead back...**  
     **reduco; lead forth...educo; lead**  
     **to...ad-duco; perduco; subduco**  
 leader...**dux, ducis, c.**  
 leaf...**frons, frondis, f.; foli-um, -i, n.**  
 learn...**disco, didici 3; per-cipio,**  
     **-cepi, -ceptum 3; cog-nosco, -novi,**  
     **-nitum 3**  
 learned (adj.)...**doct-us, -a, -um**  
 least (superl. adj.)...**minim-us, -a,**  
     **-um. See little**  
 least (superl. adv.)...**minime**  
 leave...**re-linquo, -liqui, -lictum 3;**  
     **depart from...ex-cedo, -cessi, -ces-**  
     **sum 3**  
 left (adj.), on the left side...**laev-**  
     **us, -a, -um; sinis-ter, -tra, -trum;**  
     **left hand (subs.)...sinistra**
- legate...**legat-us, -i, m.**  
 legend...**fabul-a, -ae, f.**  
 legion...**legi-o, -onis, f.**  
 leisure...**oti-um, -i, n.; have leisure**  
     **...vaco 1**  
 length...**longitud-o, -inis, f.**  
 length of time...**longinquit-as, -atis,**  
     **f.**  
 length, at length (adv.)...**tandem**  
 less (comp. adj.)...**minor. See little**  
 lessen...**minu-o, -i, -tum 3**  
 letter...**epistol-a, -ae, f.; litter-ae,**  
     **-arum, f. pl. (S.P. 38)**  
 levy (subs.)...**delect-us, -ūs, m.; to**  
     **raise a levy...delectum habēre**  
 liberty...**libert-as, -atis, f.**  
 lictor...**lict-or, -ōris, m.**  
 lie...**jac-eo, -ui, 2; lie low...jaceo;**  
     **lie in wait...insidio 1**  
 lie, tell lies...**menti-or, -tus sum**  
     **4 dep.**  
 lieutenant...**legat-us, -i, m.**  
 life...**vit-a, -ae, f.**  
 lifeless...**exanim-is, -e**  
 lift...**tollo, sustuli, sublatum, tollere**  
 light (subs.)...**lux, lucis, f.**  
 like, similar...**simil-is, -e**  
 like, in like manner as...**velut**  
 like (v.)...**libet, impers. (dat.)**  
 lily...**lili-um, -i, n.**  
 limbs...**art-us, -ūm, m. pl. (S.P. 37)**  
 linger...**cunctor 1 dep.; moror 1 dep.**  
 lion...**le-o, -onis, m.**  
 lioness...**leae-n-a, -ae, f.**  
 listen...**audio 4**  
 little (adj.)...**parv-us, -a, -um; comp.**  
     **minor, superl. minimus (S.P. 51)**  
 little (adv.)...**paullum**  
 live, be alive...**vivo, vixi, victum 3**  
 live, dwell...**habito 1**  
 living (adj.), alive...**viv-us, -a, -um**  
 long (adj.)...**long-us, -a, -um**

long, for a long time (*adv.*)...diu  
(S.P. 56)

longer, for longer time (*adv.*)...diu-  
tius (S.P. 56)

look (*v.*)...ad-spicio, -spexi, -spectrum  
3; look on...adspicio; specto 1

loosen, or loose...sol-vo, -vi, -utum 3

lose...a-mitto, -misi, -missum 3

loss...detriment-um, -i, n.

lot...sors, sortis, f.

loud...clar-us, -a, -um

love (*subs.*)...am-or, -ōris, m.

love (*v.*)...amo 1; di-ligo, -lexi,  
-lectum 3

loving...dili-gens, -gentis; amans,  
amantis

lurk...lat-eo, -ui 2 *intrans.*

lying (*adj.*), speaking untruth...  
mend-ax, -ācis

madness...insani-a, -ae, f.

magistrate...magistrat-us, -ūs, m.

magnificent...magnific-us, -a, -um;  
adparat-us, -a, -um

majority...major pars

make...facio, feci, factum 3

man...vir, viri, m.

man, human being...hom-o, -inis, c.;

old man...senex, senis (S.P. 32),  
m.; young man...juven-is, -is, m.

manage...gero, gessi, gestum 3

manner...mod-us, -i, m.; in what  
manner...quomodo

many...mult-i, -ae, -a; comp. plur-  
es, -a; superl. plurim-i, -ae, -a;  
so many...tot; how many...quot

march (*subs.*)...iter, itineris, n.

march (*v.*)...conten-do, -di 3; iter  
facio

mariner...navit-a, -ae; naut-a, -ae,  
m.

marry (of a woman)...nubo, nupsi,  
nuptum 3 (*dat.*)

marsh...pal-us, -udis, f.

master, teacher...magist-er, -ri, m.;  
owner...domin-us, -i, m.; master  
of the horse...magister equitum;  
master of the house...her-us, -i, m.

matron...matron-a, -ae, f.

matter (*subs.*)...res, rei, f.

matter (*v.*), it matters...interest  
(*impers.*) (S.P. 192); refert (*im-  
pers.*) (S.P. 193)

meadow...prat-um, -i, n.

meal, flour...far, farris, n.

meanwhile (*adv.*)...interim

measure of corn (about a peck)...  
modi-us, -i, m.

measured...modic-us, -a, -um

meet...occurr-o, -i, occursum 3 (*dat.*);  
conven-io, -i, -tum 4 (*dat.*); go to  
meet...obviam ire

mellow...mit-is, -e

memory...memori-a, -ae, f.

mend...re-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3

mention, to make mention...menti-  
onem facere

merchant...mercat-or, -ōris, m.

message...mandat-um, -i, n.

messenger...nunti-us, -i, m.

mid, middle (*adj.*)...medi-us, -a, -um  
midnight...media nox

mild...mit-is, -e; tepid-us, -a, -um

mile (1,000 paces)...mille pass-us  
-uum, m. pl. (S.P. 58)

military...militar-is, -e

milk...lac, lactis, n.

mina (a coin)...min-a, -ae, f.

mind...anim-us, -i, m.; mens, men-  
tis, f.

mind, call to...recorder 1

mindful...mem-or, -oris

minister (*subs.*)...administ-er, -ri, m.

mirror...specul-um, -i, *n.*  
 miserable...miser, -a, -um  
 misfortune...mal-um, -i, *n.*  
 miss (*v.*)...desidero 1  
 mistake (*subs.*)...err-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 mistake, make a, be mistaken (*v.*)...  
     erro 1  
 mistress...domin-a, -ae, *f.*; mistress  
     of the house...her-a, -ae, *f.*  
 mock...irri-deo, -si, -sum 2  
 moderate...modic-us, -a, -um  
 modesty...pud-or, -ōris, *m.*; modes-  
     ti-a, -ae, *f.*  
 moment of time...moment-um, -i, *n.*  
 money...argent-um, -i, *n.*; pecuni-a,  
     -ae, *f.*; aes, aeris, *n.*; preti-um,  
     -i, *n.*  
 month...mens-is, -is, *m.*  
 moon...lun-a, -ae, *f.*  
 more, in degree...magis; in quan-  
     tity...plus; in number...plur-es,  
     -a (see many, much)  
 moreover (*adv.*)...praeterea  
 morning...auror-a, -ae, *f.*; mane, *n.*  
     (*indecl.*)  
 mortals...mortal-es, -ium, *c. (pl.)*  
 most (*adj.*)...plurim-i, -ae, -a; most  
     people...plerique (see many, much)  
 most (*adv.*)...plurimum (see much)  
 mother...mater, matris, *f.*  
 mound...tumul-us, -i, *m.*; aggr-er,  
     -eris, *m.*  
 mount (*v.*)...ascend-o, -i, ascensum 3  
 mountain...mons, montis, *m.*  
 mountaineers...montan-i, -orum, *m.*  
 mounted soldier...equ-es, -itis, *m.*  
 mourn...fleo, flevi, fletum 2; defleo;  
     lugeo, luxi, luctum 2  
 mournful...maest-us, -a, -um  
 mouse...mus, muris, *c.*  
 mouth...os, oris, *m.*  
 mouth (of harbour)...osti-um, -i, *n.*

move...mov-eo, -i, motum 2; change  
     one's place of abode...migro 1  
 much (*adj.*)...mult-us, -a, -um (*S.P.*  
     51)  
 much (*adv.*)...multum, multo (*S.P.*  
     56)  
 mulberry, tree...mor-us, -i, *f.*  
 multitude...multitud-o, -inis, *f.*  
 murder...caed-es, -is, *f.*  
 my...meus (*S.P.* 62)  
 myrtle...myrt-us, -i and -ūs, *f.*  
  
 name (*subs.*)...nom-en, -inis, *n.*  
 name (*v.*)...voco 1; nomino 1  
 narrow...exigu-us, -a, -um; angust-  
     us, -a, -um  
 nation...nati-o, -onis, *f.*; popul-us,  
     -i, *m.*; gens, gentis, *f.*  
 native...indigen-us, -a, -um; natal-  
     is, -e  
 nature...natur-a, -ae, *f.*  
 near (*adj.*)...vicin-us, -a, -um  
 near (*adv.*)...prope; comp. propius,  
     superl. proxime  
 nearer (comp. *adj.*)...propi-or, -oris  
 nearest (superl. *adj.*)...proxim-us, -a,  
     -um  
 nearly...paene, fere  
 necessary...necessari-us, -a, -um  
 neck...coll-um, -i, *n.*  
 need (*subs.*)...opus, *indecl. n.*; there  
     is need...opus est (*abl.*)  
 need (*v.*), be in need...eg-eo, -ui 2  
 neglect (*v.*)...neg-lego, -lexi, -lectum  
     3  
 neighbour...vicin-us, -i, *m.*  
 neighbouring...vicin-us, -a, -um;  
     finitim-us, -a, -um  
 neither (conj.)...nec, neque; neither  
     ... nor...nec... nec; neque...  
     neque; neu... neve

neither (of two) (*adj.*)...*neu-ter, -tra, -trum*

nest...*nid-us, -i, m.*

never...*numquam*

nevertheless...*tamen*

new...*nov-us, -a, -um*

news...*res novae, rerum novarum, f. pl.*

next (following) (*adj.*)...*poster-us, -a, -um*

next (*adv.*)...*inde*

night...*nox, noctis, f.*; of a night, *nocturnal*...*nocturn-us, -a, -um*

ninth...*non-us, -a, -um*

no (not any) (*adj.*)...*null-us, -a, -um*

noble...*nobil-is, -e*

nobody...*nemo* (see no one)

noise...*clang-or, -ōris, m.*; *sonit-us, -ūs, m.*

no one...*nemo*; *acc. neminem, gen. nullius, dat. nemini, abl. nullo*

nor...*nec, neque*

north wind...*aquil-o, -onis, m.*

not...*non, haud, ne*; not yet...*non-dum*; not at all...*haudquaquam*; not even...*ne . . . quidem*

nothing...*nihil* (*nom. and acc. sing. only*) (*S.P. 41*)

novelty...*res novae, rerum novarum, f. pl.*

now...*nunc, jam*

nowhere...*nusquam*

number...*numer-us, -i, m.*; *multi-tud-o, -inis, f.*; *copi-a, -ae, f.*

oak...*querc-us, -ūs, f.*

oar...*rem-us, -i, m.*; *remigi-um, -i, n.*

obey...*par-eo, -ui 2 (dat.)*; *servio 4*

obtain...*conse-quer, -cutus sum 3 dep.*; *nanciscor, nactus sum 3 dep.*

occupy...*occupo 1*

ocean...*aequ-or, -oris, n.*; *ocean-us, -i, m.*; *mar-e, -is, n.*

of (*prep.*)...*de (abl.)*

off, cut off (*v.*)...*circum-venio, -veni, -ventum 4*; *inter-eludo, -clusi, -clusum 3*

offer...*offero, obtuli, oblatum, offerre*

office...*mun-us, -eris*; *offici-um, -i, n.* often...*saepe*

old (*adj.*)...*vet-us, -eris*; *senex, senis*; *old man*...*senex, senis (S.P. 32)*; *old age*...*senect-us, -utis, f.*

old, of old (*adv.*)...*olim*

older...*senior, natu major*

olive...*oliv-a, -ae, f.*

on (*prep.*)...*super* (*acc. with motion, abl. with rest.*)

once...*semel*; at once...*extemplo, statim*

once (upon a time)...*quondam, olim*

one...*un-us, -a, -um (S.P. 58)*

only (*adj.*)...*un-us, -a, -um*; *sol-us -a, -um (S.P. 69)*

only (*adv.*)...*solum*

onset...*impet-us, -ūs, m.*

open, be...*pat-eo, -ui 2 intrans.*

make open...*pate-facio, -feci, -fac-tum 3*

open (*adj.*)...*apert-us, -a, -um*

openly...*aperte*

operations...*oper-a, -um, n. (pl. of opus)*

opinion...*sententi-a, -ae, f.*

opponent...*adversari-us, -i, m.*; *re-pug-nans, -nantis*

opportune...*opportun-us, -a, -um*

opportunity...*occasi-o, -onis, f.*; *fa-cult-as, -atis, f.*

oppose (*in speech*)...*contra-dico, -dixi, -dictum 3*

opposed (*adj.*)...*advers-us, -a, -um*

opposite (*adj.*)...*contrari-us, -a, -um*  
 opposite to (*prep.*)...*contra (acc.)*  
 or...*aut, vel*  
 oracle...*oracul-um, -i, n.*  
 orator...*orat-or, -ōris, m.*  
 order (*subs.*)...*juss-um, -i, n.*  
 order (*v.*)...*impero 1 (dat. of person);*  
     *jubeo, jussi, jussum 2*  
 origin...*orig-o, -inis, f.; caus-a, -ae,*  
     *f.*  
 other, another...*ali-us, -a, -ud; other*  
     *(of two)...alt-er, -era, -erum; be-*  
     *longing to another...alien-us, -a,*  
     *-um*  
 ought. See owe  
 our...*noster (S.P. 62)*  
 out, out of (*prep.*)...*e, ex (abl.)*  
 over (*prep.*)...*super (acc. with mo-*  
     *tion; abl. with rest)*  
 overcome...*supero 1; vinco, vici,*  
     *victum 3*  
 overthrow...*ever-to, -ti, -sum 3*  
 owe...*debeo 2*  
 ox...*bos, bovis, c.*

pace (*five Roman feet*)...*pass-us,*  
     *-ūs, m.*  
 pain...*dol-or, -ōris, m.*  
 paint...*pingo, pinxi, pictum 3*  
 panic...*pav-or, -ōris, m.*  
 pardon (*v.*)...*ig-nosco, -novi, -notum*  
     *3*  
 parent...*parens, parentis, c.*  
 part...*pars, partis, f.*  
 part, take part in...*inter-sum, -fui,*  
     *-esse*  
 pass (*subs.*)...*angusti-ae, -arum, f.*  
     *pl.; fauc-es, -ium, f. pl.*  
 pass (*v.*)...*praeter-eo, -ii, -itum, -ire*  
 past (*adj.*)...*praeterit-us, -a, -um*  
     *(praetereo)*

pathless...*invi-us, -a, -um*  
 patience...*patienti-a, -ae, f.*  
 patrician...*patrici-us, -i, m.*  
 pattern...*form-a, -ae, f.*  
 pay (*subs.*)...*stipendi-um, -i, n.*  
 pay (*v.*), pay attention to...*operam*  
     *dare*  
 peace...*pax, pacis, f.*  
 penalty...*poen-a, -ae, f.; supplici-*  
     *um, -i, n.*  
 peninsula...*peninsul-a, -ae, f.*  
 people...*popul-us, -i, m.*  
 people, common people...*plebs, plebis,*  
     *f. (S.P. 39)*  
 perceive...*sentio 4*  
 perfect...*perfect-us, -a, -um (perficio)*  
 perform...*fungor, functus sum 3 dep.*  
 peril...*pericul-um, -i, n.*  
 perilous...*periculos-us, -a, -um*  
 perish...*per-eo, -ii, -itum, -ire, in-*  
     *trans.*  
 permit, it is permitted...*licet, licuit*  
     *2 impers.*  
 perpetual...*sempitern-us, -a, -um*  
 persuade...*per-suadeo, -suasi, -sua-*  
     *sum 2*  
 philosopher...*philosoph-us, -i, m.*  
 philosophy...*philosophi-a, -ae, f.*  
 pick up...*lego, legi, lectum 3*  
 pierce...*trans-figo, -fixi, -fixum 3*  
 pig...*porc-us, -i, m.*  
 pile, funeral...*pyr-a, -ae, f.; rog-*  
     *us, -i, m.*  
 pit...*fove-a, -ae, f.*  
 pitch a camp...*castra pono, posui,*  
     *positum 3; loco 1; pitch a tent...*  
     *tabernaculum statuo*  
 pity (*subs.*)...*misericordi-a, -ae, f.*  
 pity (*v.*), have pity on...*misereor,*  
     *miseritus sum 2 dep.; miserior*  
     *1 dep.*  
 place (*subs.*)...*loc-us, -i, m.*

place (v.)...pono, posui, positum 3;  
*place in or upon*...impono (dat.);  
 loco 1; *put in place*...colloco 1  
 place in charge or command...prae-  
 ficio, -feci, -fectum 3  
 placed...sit-us, -a, -um  
 plain (subs.)...camp-us, -i, m.  
 plan...consili-um, -i, n.  
 plant (v.)...sero, sevi, satum 3; in-  
 sero 3  
 play...ludo, -si, -sum 3  
 plead a cause...causam dico; causam  
 ago  
 pleasant...jucund-us, -a, -um; dulc-  
 is, -e; grat-us, -a, -um  
 pleasantly...jucunde  
 please...placeo 2 (dat.); juvo 1  
 pleasing...jucund-us, -a, -um; grat-  
 -us, -a, -um  
 pleasure...volupt-as, -atis, f.  
 pleasure, take pleasure in...gaudeo,  
 gavisus sum 2  
 plebs...plebs, plebis, f. (S.P. 39)  
 plot...consili-um, -i, n.  
 plough (subs.)...aratr-um, -i, n.  
 plough (v.)...aro 1  
 plunder (subs.)...praed-a, -ae, f.  
 plunder (v.)...praedo 1; praedam  
 ago, ēgi, actum  
 poet...poet-a, -ae, m.  
 point (v.)...monstro 1  
 poison...venen-um, -i, n.  
 policy...consili-um, -i, n.  
 poor...paup-er, -eris  
 popular...grat-us, -a, -um  
 porch...portic-us, -ūs, f.  
 position...loc-us, -i, m.; take up a  
 position...consido, -sedi, -sessum 3  
 possession, gain or get possession...  
 potior, potitus sum 4 dep.  
 possessions...bon-a, -orum, n. pl.;  
 opes, -um, f. pl.

possible, as . . . as possible...quam  
 (with superl.)  
 power...imper-i-um, -i, n.; potest-as,  
 -atis, f.  
 powerful...potens, potentis; valid-  
 us, -a, -um  
 powerless...impot-ens, -entis  
 praetor...praet-or, -ōris, m.  
 praise (subs.)...laus, laudis, f.  
 praise (v.)...laudo 1  
 pray to...oro 1  
 precede...ante-cedo, -cessi, -ces-  
 sum  
 preceding...super-ior, -ius (compara-  
 tive of superus)  
 precious...car-us, -a, -um  
 prefect...praefect-us, -i, m.  
 prefer...ante-pono, -posui, -positum  
 3; malo, malui, malle  
 prepare...paro 1; comparo; prepare  
 for...apparo  
 presence, in the presence of...coram  
 (prep.), abl.  
 present (subs.)...don-um, -i, n.  
 present (v.)...dono 1  
 present, to be...ad-sum, -fui, -esse  
 presently...mox  
 preserve...servo 1  
 press...premo, pressi, pressum 3  
 pressing...necessari-us, -a, -um  
 pretend...simulo 1  
 pretext...speci-es, -ei, f.; materi-a,  
 -ae, f.  
 prevail...vinco, vici, victum 3;  
 valeo, valui 2  
 previous...pri-or, -us; proxim-us,  
 -a, -um; superi-or, -us  
 price...preti-um, -i, n. (see Ex.  
 xxxiii.)  
 prisoner...captiv-us, -a, -um; re-us,  
 -i, m.  
 prisoner, take prisoner...capio 3

proceed...*pro-gredior, -gressus sum*  
3 *dep.*

proclaim...*appello* 1

prodigal...*prodig-us, -a, -um*

produce (*v.*)...*pro-fero, -tuli, -latum, proferre*

promise (*v.*)...*polliceor, pollicitus sum* 2 *dep.*

promoter...*auct-or, -ōris, c.*

prophet...*vat-es, -is, c.*

prosperity...*res secundae, rerum secundarum, f. pl.*

prosperously...*prosperare*

protection...*fid-es, -ei, f.; praesidium, -i, n.; take under protection ...in fidem recipere*

proud...*superb-us, -a, -um*

prove...*probo* 1

provide...*pro-video, -vidi, -visum* 2

province...*provinci-a, -ae, f.*

provisions...*commeat-us, -ūs, m.; cibari-a, -orum, n. pl.*

public...*public-us, -a, -um*

publicly...*publice*

punishment...*poen-a, -ae, f.; supplici-um, -i, n.*

pupil...*discipul-us, -i, m.*

pure...*mer-us, -a, -um*

purple...*purpure-us, -a, -um*

pursue...*in-sequor, -secutus sum* 3 *dep.*

pursuit...*studi-um, -i, n.*

push forth...*tru-do, -si, -sum* 3

put...*pono, posui, positum* 3; *put in place...colloco* 1; *put before...propono*

quarters (*winter*)...*hibern-a, -orum, n. pl.*

queen...*regin-a, -ae, f.*

question...*interrogati-o, -onis, f.*

quickly...*celeriter*

quiet (*adj.*)...*quiet-us, -a, -um*

quiet (*v.*)...*paco* 1; *sedo* 1

quite...*plane*

quiver (*v.*)...*trem-o, -ui, -itum* 3 *intrans.*

race (*nation*)...*gens, gentis, f.; genus, -eris, n.*

radiance...*cand-or, -ōris, m.*

raft...*rat-is, -is, f.*

raise...*levo* 1; *struo, struxi, structum* 3; *tollo, sustuli, sublatum, tollere*

rampart...*agg-er, -eris, m.*

rank...*aci-es, -ei, f.; ord-o, -inis, m.; return to the ranks...in aciem redeo, -ii, -itum, -ire*

rare...*rar-us, -a, -um; singular-is, -e rashness...temerit-as, -atis, f.*

rat...*mus, muris, c.*

rather (*adv.*)...*potius*

reach...*per-venio, -veni, -ventum ad (acc.); at-tingo, -tigi* 3; *reach a place...locum capio*

read...*lego, legi, lectum* 3

readily...*libenter*

ready...*parat-us, -a, -um*

reap...*meto, messui, messum* 3; *demeto* 3

rear (*of an army*)...*novissimum agmen; bring up the rear...agmen claudo*

reason, cause...*caus-a, -ae, f.*

reason, reasoning power...*ratio, -onis, f.*

recall...*revoco* 1

recall (*to mind*)...*recordor* 1 *dep.*

receive...*ac-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum* 3; *excipio* 3

reckon...*aestimo* 1

recognise...*cog-nosco, -novi, -nitum* 3; *agnosco* 3



reconnoître...cog-nosco, -novi, -nitum 3; agnosco 3  
 recreation...requi-es, -ētis; acc. -etem or -em, f.; lud-us, -i, m.  
 refer...refero, rettuli, relatum, referre  
 refresh...re-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3  
 refuge, *take refuge*...con-fugio, -fugi, -fugitum 3  
 refuse...recuso 1; *refuse an invitation*, nego, 1  
 regain...recupero 1  
 regardless...immem-or, -oris  
 regent...inter-rex, -regis, m.  
 region...regi-o, -onis, f.; or-a, -ae, f.; loc-a, -orum, n. pl.  
 regret (subs.)...desideri-um, -i, n.  
 reign (subs.)...regn-um, -i n.  
 reign (v.)...regno 1 *intrans.*  
 reinforcement...subsidi-um, -i, n.  
 rejoice...gaudeo, gavisus sum 2  
 relate...narro 1; commemoro 1  
 relieve...subven io, -i, -tum 4; to-lero 1; *relieve of*...levo 1  
 relying (on)...fret-us, -a, -um  
 remain...maneo, mansi, mansum 2 *intrans.*; resto, restiti 1  
 remainder...reliqu-us, -a, -um (*adj. agreeing with subs.*)  
 remaining...reliqu-us, -a, -um  
 remedy...remedi-um, -i, n.  
 remember...memini (S.P. 106)  
 remembrance...memori-a, -ae, f.  
 remove...re-moveo, -movi, -motum 2; *remove from a place*...demigro 1  
 render...red-do, -didi, -ditum 3; tribu-o, -i, -tum 3  
 renew...renovo 1; restitu-o, -i, -tum 3  
 renounce...cedo, cessi, cessum (*with abl.*)

renown...fam-a, -ae f.; glori-a, -ae, f.  
 renowned...clar-us, -a, -um  
 repair...re-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3  
 repay...red-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 repent...paenit-et, -uit 2 *impers.*  
 reply (subs.)...respons-um, -i, n.  
 reply (v.)...respon-deo, -di, -sum  
 report (v.)...fero, tuli, latum; refero, rettuli, relatum; renuntio, 1  
 represent...ex-pono, -posui, -positum 3  
 reproach...opprobri-um, -i, n.  
 republic...respublica (*see §.P. 35*)  
 require...postulo 1; desidero 1  
 rescue...erip-io, -ui, ereptum 3  
 resemblance...similitud-o, -inis, f.  
 resign...abdico 1; *resign an office*...se abdicare (*with abl.*)  
 resist...re-sisto, -stiti 3; ob-sto, -stiti, -statum 1; repugno 1  
 resistance, *make resistance* (v.)...ob-sisto, -stiti, -stitum 3  
 resolution...consili-um, -i, n.  
 resolve...statu-o, -i, -tum 3; constituo 3  
 rest (subs.)...requi-es, -etis (*acc. -etem or -em*) f.; qui-es, -etis, f.; oti-um, -i, n.  
 rest (v.)...quie-sco, -evi, -etum 3  
 rest, *the rest*...ceter-us, -a, -um; reliqu-us, -a, -um  
 restore...red-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 restrain...tempero 1; moderor, moderatus sum 1 *dep.*; contin-eo, -ui, contentum 2  
 result...event-us, -ūs, m.  
 retire, *to retire in battle*...se recipere 3  
 retreat (v.)...pedem refero, rettuli, relatum, referre  
 return (subs.)...redit-us, -ūs, m.  
 return (v.), *go back*...red-eo, -ii,

-itum, -ire; re-vertor, -versus  
sum 3 *dep.*  
return (*v.*)...give back...red-do, -didi,  
-ditum 3  
revolt (*subs.*)...defecti-o, -onis, *f.*  
revolt (*v.*)...de-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3  
reward (*subs.*)...praemi-um, -i, *n.*;  
merc-es, -ēdis, *f.*  
rich...div-es, -itis; opulent-us, -a,  
-um  
riches...diviti-ae, -arum, *f. pl.*;  
op-es, -um, *f. pl.*  
ridge...jug-um, -i, *n.*  
right, *opposed to wrong*...fas, *n.*  
*indecl.*  
right hand...dextra; *right-hand side*  
...dext-er, -era, -erum; or -ra,  
-rum  
rightly...recte  
ring...annul-us, -i, *m.*  
ringleader...auct-or, -ōris, *c.*  
ripe...matur-us, -a, -um  
rise...surgo, surrexi, surrectum 3;  
orior, ortus sum 4 *dep.*; *rise again*  
...resurgo  
rites...sacr-a, -orum, *n. pl.*  
river...flum-en, -inis, *n.*; amn-is, -is,  
*m.*; fluvi-us, -i, *m.*  
road...vi-a, -ae, *f.*; it-er, -ineris, *n.*  
roar...frem-o, -ui, -itum 3; rugio 4  
robber...latr-o, -onis, *m.*  
robe...vest-is, -is, *f.*  
roof...tect-um, -i, *n.*  
root...rad-ix, -icis, *f.*  
rosy...purpure-us, -a, -um  
round (*prep.*)...circa, circum (*acc.*)  
rouse...stimulo 1  
rout (*v.*)...fugo 1; fundo, fudi,  
fusum 3  
royal...regi-us, -a, -um  
ruin (*subs.*)...ruin-a, -ae, *f.*  
ruin (*v.*)...per-do, -didi, -ditum 3

rule (*v.*)...rego, rexi, rectum 3; im-  
pero 1  
ruler...rex, regis, *m.* *SOLE IMPERATOR*  
run...curro, cucurri, cursum 3; *run*  
*together*...con-curro, -curri, -cur-  
sum 3  
rush (*v.*)...ru-o, -i, -tum or ruitum 3  
rustic...rustic-us, -a, -um  
  
sacred...sanct-us, -a, -um  
sacrifice...sacrifici-um, -i, *n.*  
safe...tut-us, -a, -um; incolum-is, -e  
safety...sal-us, -ūtis, *f.*  
sail (*v.*)...navigo 1; *set sail*...sol-vo,  
-vi, -utum 3; *navem solvo*  
sailor...naut-a, -ae, *m.*  
sails...vela, velorum, *n. pl.*  
salt...sal, salis, *m.*  
salute...salute 1  
same...idem, eadem, idem  
sanctuary...sacrari-um, -i, *n.*  
satisfy...satis-facio, -feci, -factum 3  
(*dat.*)  
save...servo 1  
say...dico, dixi, dictum 3; aio; in-  
quam (*S.P.* 106)  
\*scarcely...vix  
scarcity...inopi-a, -ae, *f.*  
scatter...sub-jicio, -jeci, -jectum 3  
science...scienti-a, -ae, *f.*  
scout...explorat-or, -ōris, *m.*  
sea...mar-e, -is, *n.*; aequ-or, -oris, *n.*  
search out...ex-qui-ro, -quisivi, -qui-  
situm 3; investigo 1  
season...temp-us, -oris, *n.*  
second...secund-us, -a, -um; alt-er,  
-era, -erum  
see...vid-eo, -i, visum 2; con-spicio,  
-spexi, -spectum 3  
seed...sem-en, -inis, *n.*; gran-um,  
-i, *n.*

seek...quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum 3;  
 re-quo, -quisivi, -quisitum;  
 pet-o, -ivi, -itum 3  
 seem...videor, visus sum 2 (*pass. of*  
*video*)  
 seize...rap-io, -ui, -tum 3; occupo 1  
 self...ipse, ipsa, ipsum  
 sell...ven-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 senate...senat-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 senators...patr-es, -um, *m. pl.*;  
 patres conscripti, *m. pl.*  
 send...mitto, misi, missum 3; *send*  
*for*...arcess-o, -ivi, -itum; *send*  
*away*...dimitto; *send back*...re-  
 mitto; *send forward*...praemitto;  
*send up*...submitto  
 senior...natu major  
 serious...grav-is, -e  
 serpent...serp-ens, -entis, *f.*  
 servant...serv-us, -i, *m.*  
 serve...servio 4  
 service...benefici-um, -i, *n.*; merit-  
 um, -i, *n.*  
 service, to be of service...pro-sum,  
 -fui, prodesse  
 set free...libero 1  
 set on fire...incen-do, -di, -sum 3  
 set out...proficiscor, profectus sum  
 3 *dep.*  
 set sail...navem solvo 3  
 set up...constitu-o, -i, -tum 3  
 settle...con-ficio, -feeci, -fectum 3  
 settler...colon-us, -i, *m.*  
 seven...septem  
 seventh...septim-us, -a, -um  
 seventy...septuaginta  
 severe...grav-is, -e; ac-er, -ris, -re  
 shade...umbr-a, -ae, *f.*  
 shadow...umbr-a, -ae, *f.*  
 shake...quasso 1  
 shame...pud-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 shameful...turp-is, -e

shape...figur-a, -ae, *f.*  
 shatter...dis-cutio, -cussi, -cussum 3  
 shed...fundo, fudi, fustum 3; effundo  
 sheep...ov-is, -is, *f.*; biden-s, -tis  
 shepherd...past-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 shine...fulgeo, fulsi 2 *intrans.*  
 ship...nav-is, -is, *f.*; pupp-is, -is, *f.*;  
*war-ships*...naves longae  
 shore...lit-us, -oris, *n.*; or-a, -ae, *f.*  
 short...brev-is, -e  
 shortly...brevi, breviter; *shortly*  
*before*...proxime  
 shoulder...humer-us, -i, *m.*  
 shout (*subs.*)...clam-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 show...monstro 1; significo 1  
 shun...fug-io, -i, -itum 3  
 shut...clau-do, -si, -sum 3; *shut out*  
 ...ex-cludo, -clusi, -clusum 3; se-  
 cludo  
 sick...aeger, aegra, aegrum  
 side...lat-us, -eris, *n.*; *side in a*  
*dispute or game*...pars, partis, *f.*;  
*on both sides*...utrimque; *on all*  
*sides*...undique  
 siege...obsidi-o, -ōnis, *f.*  
 sight...conspect-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 silence...silenti-um, -i, *n.*  
 silent, be silent...tac-eo 2 *intrans.*  
 silent...tacit-us, -a, -um  
 silver...argent-um, -i, *n.*  
 sin (*v.*)...pecco 1  
 since (*conj.*)...cum, quoniam (*see Ex.*  
*LXVII*)  
 sing...cano, cecini, cantum 3 *in-*  
*trans.*  
 sink...mer-go, -si, -sum 3  
 sister...sor-or, -ōris, *f.*  
 sit...sedeo, sēdi, sessum 2 *intrans.*  
 site...loc-us, -i, *m.*  
 six...sex  
 sixth...sext-us, -a, -um  
 sixty...sexaginta

size...magnitud-o, -inis, f.  
 skilful, skilled...perit-us, -a, -um  
 skirmish...proeli-um, -i, n.  
 slaughter...clad-es, -is, f.; caed-es, -is, f.  
 slave...serv-us, -i, m.  
 slavery...servit-us, -utis, f.  
 slay...inter-ficio, -feci, -fectum 3;  
 oc-cido, -cidi, -cisum 3  
 sleep (v.)...dormio 4  
 slender...tenu-is, -e  
 sloth...segniti-a, -ae, f.; ignavi-a, -ae, f.  
 slowness...tardit-as, -atis, f.  
 slowly...lente  
 sluggish...segn-is, -e  
 small...parv-us, -a, -um; comp.  
 minor; *superl.* minimus (S.P. 51);  
 paull-us, -a, -um; exigu-us, -a, -um  
 snake...angu-is, -is, m.  
 snare...fove-a, -ae, f.; laque-us, -i, m.  
 snatch...rap-io, -ui, -tum 3; *snatch out*...e-ripio, -ripui, -reptum  
 snow...nix, nivis, f.  
 snowy...nive-us, -a, -um  
 so, in such manner...sic, ita; so much...tam; so great...tant-us, -a, -um  
 soft...moll-is, -e  
 soften...mollio 4; permul-ceo, -si, -sum 2  
 soil...sol-um, -i, n.  
 soldier...mil-es, -itis, c.; soldier (mounted)...equ-es, -itis, m.; soldier (foot)...ped-es, -itis, m.  
 soldiery...mil-es, -itis, m.  
 sole...sol-us, -a, -um  
 some . . . others...alii . . . alii; some (in number)...aliquot (*indecl.*); nonnull-i, -ae, -a; some

(in quantity)...aliquant-us, -a, -um  
 some-one or -thing...ali-quis, -qua, -quid  
 sometime...aliquando  
 somewhat...aliquanto  
 son...filius, fili (S.P. 19); nat-us, -i (nascor), m.  
 son-in-law...gen-er, -eri, m.  
 song...carm-en, -inis, n.  
 soon...mox  
 sooner...maturnus  
 soothsayer...harusp-ex, -icis, m.  
 sorrow...dol-or, -ōris, m.  
 sorrowing...maest-us, -a, -um  
 sound...sonit-us, -ūs, m.  
 south wind...not-us, -i, m.  
 sovereign...rex, regis, m.  
 sovereignty...regn-um, -i, n.  
 sow...sero, sevi, satum 3  
 space . . . spati-um, -i, n.  
 space of two &c. days...biduum &c.  
 space of two &c. years...biennium &c.  
 spare...parco, peperi 3 *intrans.*  
 speak...loquor, locutus sum 3 *dep. intrans.*  
 spear...hast-a, -ae, f.  
 special...propri-us, -a, -um  
 speech...orati-o, -ōnis, f.  
 speed...celerit-as, -atis, f.; velocit-as, -atis, f.  
 spend...con-sumo, -sumpsi, -sumptum 3  
 spirit...anim-us, -i, m.  
 splendid...ornat-us -a, -um  
 spoil (*subs.*)...praed-a, -ae, f.  
 spread...pand-o, -i, pansum 3  
 spring (*season*)...ver, veris, n.  
 spring (*of water*)...fons, fontis, m.  
 spy...explorat-or, -ōris, m.  
 squadron...al-a, -ae, f.

stable...stabul-um, -i, *n.*  
 stag...cerv-us, -i, *m.*  
 stand...sto, steti, statum 1 *intrans.*;  
*stand by*...ad-sto, -stiti; *stand*  
*apart*...di-sto; *standing apart*  
 ...di-stans, -stantis  
 standard...sign-um, -i, *n.*  
 star...stell-a, -ae, *f.*; sid-us, -eris, *n.*;  
 astr-um, -i, *n.*  
 state...civit-as, -atis, *f.*; respublica  
 (*S.P.* 35)  
 station (*subs.*)...stati-o, -onis, *f.*;  
 loc-us, -i, *m.*  
 station (*v.*)...colloco 1; con-sisto,  
 -stiti, -stitum 3  
 statue...statu-a, -ae, *f.*; sign-um, -i,  
*n.*  
 steal...sur-ripio, -ripui, -reptum 3  
 steel...ferr-um, -i, *n.*  
 steersman...gubernat-or, -ōris, *m.*  
 stem...stirps, stirpis, *f.*  
 step (*subs.*)...grad-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 step out...egredior, egressus sum  
 3 *dep.*  
 stern...pupp-is, -is, *m.* *sub*  
 steward...vilic-us, -i, *m.*  
 stir...incito 1; *stir up*...excito  
 stone...sax-um, -i, *n.*; lap-is, -idis,  
*m.*  
 storm (*subs.*)...tempest-as, -atis, *f.*  
 storm (*v.*)...expugno 1  
 story...fabell-a, -ae, *f.*  
 — straight...direct-us, -a, -um  
 stream...amn-is, -is, *m.*; riv-us, -i,  
*m.*  
 street...vi-a, -ae, *f.*  
 strength...vires, *f. pl.* (*S.P.* 28)  
 strengthen...firmo 1; augeo, auxi,  
 auctum 2  
 stretch...por-rigo, -rexi, -rectum 3  
 strew...sterno, stravi, stratum 3;  
 fundo, fudi, fustum 3

strike...ferio 4; per-cutio, -cussi,  
 -cussum 3; *strike together*...con-  
 fligo, -fixi, -fictum 3  
 strip...nudo 1  
 strive after...adfecto 1  
 strong...valid-us, -a, -um; firm-us,  
 -a, -um  
 stubborn...indocil-is, -e  
 study...studi-um, -i, *n.*  
 subdue...vinco, vici, victum 3  
 submit...obsequor, obsecutus sum 3  
*dep. (dat.)*  
 succumb...suc-cumbo, -cubui, -cubi-  
 tum 3  
 such, of such kind...tal-is, -e; of  
 such magnitude...tant-us, -a, -um  
 suddenly...subito, repente  
 suffer...laboro 1; patior, passus  
 sum 3 *dep.*  
 suit (*v.*)...con-venio, -veni, -ventum  
 4  
 suitable...idone-us, -a, -um  
 summer...aest-as, -atis, *f.*  
 summon...voco 1  
 sun...sol, solis, *m.*; at sunrise...  
 oriente sole, prima luce; at sunset  
 ...solis occasu  
 supper...cen-a, -ae, *f.*  
 suppliant (*adj.*)...suppl-ex, -icis  
 suppliant (*subs.*)...suppl-ex, -icis, *c.*  
 supply (*subs.*)...copi-a, -ae, *f.*;  
 of provisions...res frumentaria;  
 supplies...op-es, -um, *f. pl.*  
 support (*subs.*)...auxili-um, -i, *n.*  
 support (*v.*)...sustento 1  
 supreme...suprem-us, -a, -um (*S.P.*  
 54)  
 sure...cert-us, -a, -um  
 surely...certe  
 surpass...supero 1  
 surrender...de-do, -didi, -ditum 3  
 surround...cingo, cixi, cinctum 3

survive...super-sum, -fui, -esse  
 suspicion...suspici-o, -ōnis, f.  
 sustain...sustin-eo, -ui, sustentum 2;  
     ac-cipio, -cepi, -ceptum 3  
 sweep away...ab-sumo, -sumpsi,  
     -sumptum 3  
 sweet...suav-is, -e  
 swell...tumeo 2 *intrans.*  
 swift...cel-er, -eris, -ere; vel-ox,  
     -ocis  
 swiftly...celeriter  
 swim...nato 1  
 sword...gladi-us, -i, m.; ens-is, -is,  
     m.; ferr-um, -i, n.

table...mens-a, -ae, f.  
 tail...cand-a, -ae, f.  
 take...capio, cepi, captum 3; sumo,  
     sumpsi, sumptum 3; take a city  
     ...capio; take by assault...ex-  
     pugno 1; take prisoner...capio;  
     take away...aufero, abstuli, abla-  
     tum, auferre; e-ripio, -ripui,  
     -reptum 3; take back...re-cipio,  
     -cepi, -ceptum 3  
 tale...fabul-a, -ae, f.  
 talent...talent-um, -i, n.  
 talk...loquor, locutus sum 3 *dep.*;  
     colloquor  
 talking (*subs.*)...serm-o, -ōnis, f.  
 teach...doc-eo, -ui, -tum 2  
 tell...narro 1  
 temple...templ-um, -i, n.; aed-es,  
     -is, f. (*singular only*) (S.P. 38)  
 ten...decem  
 tenacious...ten-ax, -acis  
 tent...tabernacul-um, -i, n.  
 tenth...decim-us, -a, -um  
 terrify...terreo 2  
 territory...ag-er, -ri, m.; regi-o,  
     -ōnis, f.

terror...terr-or, -ōris, m.; pav-or,  
     -ōris, m.  
 than...quam  
 thanks...grati-ae, -arum (S.P. 38);  
     give thanks...gratias ago, egi,  
     actum  
 that (*conj.*)...ut  
 that, those...is, ea, id; ille, illa,  
     illud (S.P. 63); iste, ista, istud  
 theft...furt-um, -i, n.  
 then...tunc, tum  
 thence...inde  
 thenceforward...inde  
 there...ibi  
 therefore...igitur, itaque  
 thief...fur, furis, m.  
 thine...tu-us, -a, -um  
 thing...res, rei, f.  
 think...puto 1; existimo 1; cogito 1;  
     censeo 2; sentio 4  
 third...terti-us, -a, -um  
 thirty...triginta  
 this, these...hic, haec, hoc (S.P. 63)  
 thither...eo  
 those. See that  
 thou...tu (S.P. 61)  
 thousand...mille (*indecl.*); thousands  
     ...milia, milium (S.P. 58)  
 three...tres, tria (S.P. 58)  
 thrice...ter  
 throne...soli-um, -i, n.  
 through, throughout (*prep.*)...per  
     (*acc.*)  
 throw...jacio, jeci, jactum 3; con-  
     jici, -jeci, -jectum 3  
 throw away...abjicio  
 thunder...fulm-en, -inis, n.  
 thus...sic, ita  
 thy...tuus (S.P. 62)  
 tiger...tigr-is, -is or -idis, c.  
 till (*v.*)...col-o, -ui, cultum 3  
 time...temp-us, -oris, n.; for a long

time...*diu*; *from that time...*  
*deinde*  
 timid...*timid-us, -a, -um*  
 to (*prep.*)...*ad (acc.)*  
 to-day...*hodie*  
 together...*simul*  
 toil...*lab-or, -ōris, m.*  
 token...*insign-e, -is, n.*  
 to-morrow...*cras*; *crastinus dies*  
 tongue...*lingu-a, -ae, f.*  
 too...*nimis*; *too much...nimium*  
 top, of mountain...*summus mons*  
 torch...*flamm-a, -ae, f.*  
 toss about...*jacto* 1  
 touch...*tango, tetigi, tactum* 3; *attingo, attingi* 3  
 touch (*of ships*)...*ap-pellor, -pulsus* 3  
 towards (*prep.*)...*versus, adversus*  
*(acc.)*  
 tower...*turr-is, -is, f.*  
 town...*oppid-um, -i, n.*  
 townsman...*oppidan-us, -a, -um*  
 trample on...*ob-ruo, -rui, -rutum* 3  
 tranquil...*placid-us, -a, -um*; *aequ-us, -a, -um*; *quiet-us, -a, -um*  
 travel...*iter facio, feci, factum* 3  
 traveller...*viat-or, -ōris, m.*  
 treacherous...*perfid-us, -a, -um*  
 treachery...*fraus, fraudis, f.*; *perfid-i-a, -ae, f.*  
 treason...*proditio, -ōnis, f.*  
 treaty...*foed-us, -eris, n.*  
 tree...*arb-or, -oris, f.*  
 tremble...*trepido* 1  
 trench...*foss-a, -ae, f.*; *make a trench...fossam duco, duxi, ductum* 3; *a hidden trench...vallum caecum*  
 trial, put on trial...*reum facio, feci, factum* 3; *accuso* 1  
 tribe...*popul-us, -i, m.*  
 tribune...*tribun-us, -i, m.*

triumph (*v.*)...*triumpho* 1  
 troops...*copi-ae, -arum, f.*; *auxiliary troops...auxili-a, -orum, n. pl.*  
 trouble...*dol-or, -ōris, m.*  
 troublesome...*molest-us, -a, -um*  
 true...*ver-us, -a, -um*  
 truly...*vere*  
 trumpet...*tub-a, -ae, f.*  
 trust...*con-fido, -fusus sum* 3 *semi-dep.*; *cre-do, -didi, -ditum* 3  
 trusty...*fid-us, -a, -um*; *fidel-is, -e*  
 truth...*verit-as, -atis, f.*  
 try...*conor* 1 *dep.*  
 tumult...*tumult-us, -ūs, m.*  
 turn...*vert-o, -i, versum* 3; *convert-o; flecto, flexi, flectum* 3;  
*turn back...revert-o; turn the back (take to flight)...tergum verto*  
 twelve...*duodecim*  
 twenty...*viginti*  
 two...*duo, duae, duo* (*S.P. 58*)  
 two-edged...*bipenn-is, -e*; *anceps, ancipitis*  
 tyrant...*tyrann-us, -i, m.*  
 unaccustomed...*insuet-us, -a, -um*  
 unbroken...*inte-ger, -gra, -grum*  
 uncertain...*incert-us, -a, -um*  
 uncle...*patru-us, -i, m.*  
 unconquered...*invict-us, -a, -um*  
 under (*prep.*)...*sub* (*acc. with motion abl. with rest*)  
 understand...*intel-lego, -lexi, -lectum* 3  
 undertake (*followed by subs.*)...*suscipio, -cepi, -ceptum*; (*followed by acc. with inf.*) *recipio*  
 unfinished...*infect-us, -a, -um*  
 unfortunate...*mis-er, -era, -erum*  
 ungrateful...*ingrat-us, -a, -um*

unhappy...mis-er, -era, -erum  
 unless...nisi  
 unlike...dissimil-is, -e  
 unmindful...immem-or, -oris  
 unpleasant...molest-us, -a, -um  
 unskilled...imperit-us, -a, -um  
 unsubdued...invict-us, -a, -um  
 until...donec, quoad  
 unwilling...invit-us, -a, -um  
 unwilling, to be...nolo, nolui, nolle  
 unwillingly...in vitus  
 unworthy...indign-us, -a, -um  
 upon (*prep.*)...in (*acc. with motion,*  
*abl. with rest*)  
 uproot...e-vert-o, -verti, -versum 3  
 urge on...im-pello, -puli, -pulsum 3  
 use (*subs.*) to be of use...usus esse  
 (*dat.*)  
 use (*v.*)...utor, usus sum 3 *dep.*;  
 ad-hibeo, -hibui, -hibitum 2  
 useful...util-is, -e  
 useless...inutil-is, -e  
 utter...dico, dixi, dictum 3

vain, useless...irrit-us, -a, -um;  
 van-us, -a, -um; in vain...frustra  
 (*adv.*)  
 valley...vall-is, -is, f.  
 valour...fortitud-o, -inis, f.; virt-us,  
 -utis, f.  
 value (*subs.*)...preti-um, -i, n.; to  
 account of great, little, more, no  
 &c. value...magni, parvi, pluris,  
 nihili facere  
 value (*v.*)...aestimo 1; to value  
 highly, little, more, not at all, as  
 highly . . . as...magni, parvi,  
 pluris, nihili, tanti . . . quanti  
 aestimare  
 vanguard...primum agmen, n.  
 vanquish...vinco, vici, victum 3

varied...dissimil-is, -e  
 various...vari-us, -a, -um  
 vast...in-gens, -gentis; immens-us,  
 -a, -um  
 venerable...venerabil-is, -e  
 very (*adv.*)...maxime, valde  
 vessel...vas, vasis, n.  
 veteran...veteran-us, -i, m.  
 vex, it vexes...piget 2 *impers.*  
 vice...viti-um, -i, n.  
 victorious...vict-or, -oris  
 victory...victori-a, -ae, f.  
 village...vic-us, -i, m.  
 vine...vit-is, -is, f.  
 violence...vis, *pl.* vires (*S.P.* 28)  
 violent...asp-er, -era, -erum  
 virgin...virg-o, -inis, f.  
 virtue...virt-us, -utis, f.  
 visit (*v.*)...con-venio, -veni, -ventum  
 4  
 voice...vox, vocis, f.  
 void...vacu-us, -a, -um; nud-us, -a,  
 -um  
 vow...voveo, vovi, votum 2

wage (*v.*)...gero, gessi, gestum 3  
 waggon...carr-us, -i, m.  
 wait...exspecto 1  
 wall...mur-us, -i, m.; walls of a  
 town or city...moenia, n. *pl.*  
 wander...erro 1; vago 1  
 want (*subs.*)...inopi-a, -ae, f.  
 want (*v.*), need...eg-eo, -ui 2; want,  
 be without...careo, 2; to be want-  
 ing...de-sum, -fui, -esse  
 war...bell-um, -i, n.; wage war...  
 bellum gero, gessi, gestum 3; at  
 the war or in war...belli  
 warfare...militi-a, -ae, f.  
 warlike...bellicos-us, -a, -um  
 warn...moneo 2



warning...monit-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 wasp...crabr-o, -ōnis, *m.*  
 waste, lay waste...populor 1 *dep.* ;  
     vasto 1  
 watch (*subs.*) (*of the night*)...vigili-a,  
     -ae, *f.*  
 watch (*v.*), watch over...vigilo 1  
 water (*subs.*)...aqu-a, -ae, *f.*  
 water (*v.*)...rigo 1  
 wave...fluct-us, -ūs, *m.* ; und-a,  
     -ae, *f.*  
 way...vi-a, -ae, *f.* ; iter, itineris, *n.*  
 way, give way...cedo, cessi, cessum 3  
 we...nos (*S.P.* 61)  
 wealth...op-es, -um, *f. pl.* (*S.P.* 38)  
 wealthy...opulent-us, -a, -um ; div-  
     es, -itis  
 weapon...tel-um, -i, *n.*  
 wearied, weary...fess-us, -a, -um  
     (*part. of fatiscor* 3 *dep.*)  
 weather...tempest-as, -atis, *f.*  
 week...septem dies  
 weep...fleo, flevi, fletum 2  
 weeping...flet-us, -ūs, *m.*  
 weigh...pendo, pependi, pensum 3 ;  
     pondero 1  
 weigh anchor...navem solv-o, -i,  
     solutum 3  
 weight...pond-us, -eris, *n.*  
 welcome (*adj.*)...grat-us, -a, -um  
 well...bene  
 well-known...not-us, -a, -um  
 what (*adj.*)...qui, quae, quod  
 what? (*interrog.*)...quid?  
 whatever. See whoever  
 wheat...tritice-um, -i, *n.*  
 when...cum, quando, ubi  
 whence...unde  
 where...ubi  
 wherefore?...quare?  
 whether...utrum, an ; whether . . .  
     or...utrum . . . an

which? (*interrog.*)...qui, quae, quid?  
     which (*relative*)...qui, quae, quod ;  
     which? (*of two*)...uter?  
 while...dum  
 white...alb-us, -a, -um ; candid-us,  
     -a, -um  
 whither...quo  
 who? (*interrog.*)...quis, quid  
 who (*rel. pron.*)...qui, quae, quod  
 whoever...quisquis, quicumque  
     (*S.P.* 68)  
 whole...tot-us, -a, -um ; univers-us,  
     -a, -um  
 why?...cur. quare?  
 wicked...improb-us, -a, -um ; scele-  
     rat-us, -a, -um  
 wickedness...scel-us, -eris, *n.*  
 wide...lat-us, -a, -um  
 widely...late  
 wife...ux-or, -ōris, *f.* ; con-jux,  
     -jugis, *c.*  
 will (*subs.*)...volunt-as, -atis, *f.*  
 will (*v.*), be willing...vol-o, -ui, velle ;  
     will not = be unwilling...nol-o, -ui,  
     nolle (*S.P.* 104)  
 willingly...benigne  
 wind...vent-us, -i, *m.*  
 wine...vin-um, -i, *n.* ; mer-um, -i, *n.*  
 wing...al-a, -ae, *f.*  
 winter...hiemps, hiemis, *f.*  
 winter quarters...hibern-a, -orum,  
     *n. pl.*  
 wisdom...sapienti-a, -ae, *f.* ; consili-  
     um, -i, *n.*  
 wise...sapi-ens, -entis  
 wish...vol-o, -ui, velle ; wish not...  
     nol-o, -ui, nolle ; wish rather...  
     mal-o, -ui, malle (*S.P.* 104)  
 with (*prep.*)...cum (*abl.*)  
 withdraw...rē-duco, -duxi, -ductum 3  
     *trans.* ; withdraw from ... cedo,  
     cessi, cessum 3 (*abl.*)

within (*adv.*)...intro, intra  
 within (*prep.*)...intra (*acc.*)  
 without (*adv.*)...extra  
 without (*prep.*)...outside...extra (*acc.*)  
 without (*prep.*)...sine (*abl.*)  
 withstand...sus-tineo, -tinui, -ten-  
 tum 2; resisto, restiti 3  
 witness...test-is, -is, c.  
 witty, to say witty sayings...dicta  
 dicere  
 wolf...lup-us, -i, m.  
 wonder...miror 1 *dep.*  
 wonderful...mir-us, -a, -um  
 wood...lign-um, -i, n.  
 wood, a wood...silv-a, -ae, f.; salt-  
 us, -ūs, m.  
 word...verb-um, -i, n.; vox, vocis, f.  
 work (*subs.*)...op-us, -eris, n.; fabric-  
 a, -ae, f.  
 work (*v.*)...laboro 1  
 workman...munit-or, -ōris, m.; ar-  
 tif-ex, -icis, c.  
 world...mund-us, -i, m.; orbis ter-  
 rarum, m.  
 worse...pej-or, -us (*S.P.* 51)  
 worship...adoro 1; colo, colui, cul-  
 tum 3  
 worth (*subs.*), to account or hold of  
 great, little, more, no &c. worth...  
 magni, parvi, pluris, nihili  
 facere  
 worthlessness...nequiti-a, -ae, f.  
 worthy...dign-us, -a, -um  
 worthy, deem worthy...dignor, dig-  
 natus sum 1 *dep.*

wound (*subs.*)...vuln-us, -eris, n.  
 wound (*v.*)...vulnero 1  
 wreck (*v.*)...frango, fregi, fractum  
 3  
 wretched...mis-er, -era, -erum  
 write...scribo, scripsi, scriptum 3  
 writing...script-um, -i, n.  
 wrong (*subs.*), opposed to right...nefas,  
 n. indecl.; a wrong...injuri-a,  
 -ae, f.  
 wrong, do a...male-facio, -feci, fac-  
 tum 3 (*dat.*)

year...ann-us, -i, m.  
 yesterday...heri; hesternus dies  
 yet (*adv.*) (of time), as yet...etiam,  
 etiamnunc, adhuc; not yet...  
 nondum  
 yet (*conj.*), nevertheless...tamen  
 yield...cedo, cessi, cessum 3  
 yoke...jug-um, -i, n.  
 you, ye...vos (*S.P.* 61)  
 young...juvenis; *comp.* junior,  
 natu minor; *superl.* natu minimus  
 (*S.P.* 51)  
 your...vester (*S.P.* 62)  
 youth...juvent-us, -utis, f.  
 youth, a youth...juven-is, -is, c.;  
 adolesc-ens, -entis, c.

zeal...studi-um, -i, n.  
 zest...studi-um, -i, n.

## NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES

---

Ac-co, -onis, *m.*  
 Achill-es, -is, *m.*  
 Aene-as, -ae, *m.*  
 Aequ-i, -orum, *m.*  
 Afric-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Agripp-a, -ae, *m.*  
 Alb-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Alexand-er, -ri, *m.*  
 Al-is, -idis, *f.*  
 Alps, Alp-es, -ium, *f.*  
 Ambian-i, -orum, *m.*  
 Amuli-us, -i, *m.*  
 Anchis-es, -ae, *m.*  
 Ani-o, -ēnis, *m.*  
 Antimach-us, -i, *m.*  
 Antioch, Antiochi-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Antioch-us, -i, *m.*  
 Anti-um, -i, *n.*  
 Antony, Antoni-us, -i, *m.*  
 Apoll-o, -inis, *m.*  
 Appi-us, -i, *m.*  
 Aquilei-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Ar-ar, -aris, *m.*  
 Arbocal-a, -orum, *n.*  
 Arde-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Arethus-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Ariovist-us, -i, *m.*  
 Ascani-us, -i, *m.*  
 Asia, Asi-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Athenian, Atheniens-is, -e.

Athens, Athen-ae, -arum, *f.*  
 August-us, -i, *m.*  
 Aventine, Mons Aventinus.

Bacch-us, -i, *m.*  
 Bacul-us, -i, *m.*  
 Bai-ae, -arum, *f.*  
 Balb-us, -i, *m.*  
 Britain, Britanni-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Briton, Britann-us, -a, -um.  
 Brundisi-um, -i, *n.*  
 Brut-us, -i, *m.*

Cac-us, -i, *m.*  
 Caesar, *gen.* Caesaris, *m.*  
 Caius, *gen.* Cai, *m.*  
 Camill-us, -i, *m.*  
 Campani-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Campanian, Campan-us, -a, -um.  
 Capitol, Capitoli-um, -i, *n.*  
 Capu-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Cartei-a, -ae, *f.*  
 Carthage, Carthag-o, -inis, *f.*  
 Carthaginian, Carthaginiens-is, -e;  
     Poen-us, -a, -um.  
 Cassibelaun-us, -i, *m.*  
 Cast-or, -oris, *m.*  
 Catiline, Catilin-a, -ae, *m.*

Cat-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Chlor-is, -idis, *f*.  
 Cicer-o, ōnis, *m*.  
 Cincinnat-us, -i, *m*.  
 Cinci-us, -i, *m*.  
 Claudi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Cleopat-r-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Clodi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Cluili-us, -i, *m*.  
 Collatin-us, -i, *m*.  
 Colline, Collin-us, -a, -um.  
 Commi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Considi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Cor-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Corcyr-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Corneli-us, -i, *m*.  
 Crass-us, -i, *m*.  
 Crastin-us, -i, *m*.  
 Crete, Cret-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Cum-a, -arum, *f*.

Daun-us, -i, *m*.  
 Decemb-er, -ris.  
 Delian, Deli-us, -a, -um.  
 Demetri-us, -i, *m*.  
 Demosthen-es, -is, *m*.  
 Dian-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Did-o, -ōnis, *f*.  
 Dionysi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Dis, *gen*. Ditis, *m*.  
 Divitiac-us, -i, *m*.  
 Domiti-us, -i, *m*.  
 Drom-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Druids, Druid-es, -um, *m*.  
 Dumnor-ix, -igis, *m*.

Egypt, Aegypt-us, -i, *f*.  
 Epir-us, -i, *m*.  
 Etruri-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Etruscan, Etrusc-us, -a, -um.  
 Evand-er, -ri, *m*.

Fabi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Faustul-us, -i, *m*.  
 Fiden-ae, -arum, *f*.  
 Flor-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Fulvi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Furi-us, -i, *m*.

Gabi-i, -orum, *m*.  
 Galb-a, -ae, *m*.  
 Gallic, Gallic-us, -a, -um.  
 Gaul, a Gaul, Gall-us, -i.  
 Gaul (the country), Galli-a, -ae, *f*. ;  
     Nearer Gaul, Gallia citerior ;  
     Further Gaul, Gallia ulterior.  
 German, German-us, -a, -um.  
 Germany, Germani-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Gracch-us, -i, *m*.  
 Greece, Graeci-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Greek, Graec-us, -a, -um.

Haedu-i, -orum, *m*.  
 Hamilc-ar, -aris, *m*.  
 Hannib-al, -alis, *m*.  
 Hann-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Hasdrub-al, -alis, *m*.  
 Hect-or, -oris, *m*.  
 Helvetian, Helvetian-us, -a, -um.  
 Helveti-i, -orum, *m*.  
 Heracle-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Hercul-es, -is, *m*.  
 Herodot-us, -i, *m*.  
 Horati-us, -i, *m*.  
 Hortensi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Hostili-us, -i, *m*.

Ind-us, -i, *m*.  
 Isocrat-es, -is, *m*.  
 Italy, Itali-a, -ae, *f*.

Janiculum, Mons Janiculus.  
 Jove. See Jupiter.

Jun-o, -ōnis, *f*.  
 Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis, *m*. (*S.P.* 32)  
 Jur-a, -ae, *f*.

Labien-us, -i, *m*.  
 Laeli-us, -i, *m*.  
 Lami-a, -ae, *m*.  
 Latian, Lati-us, -a, -um.  
 Latin, Latin-us, -a, -um.  
 Laus-us, -i, *m*.  
 Lavini-um, -i, *n*.  
 Lentul-us, -i, *m*.  
 Licini-us, -i, *m*.  
 Lisc-us, -i, *m*.  
 Loire, Lig-er, -eris, *m*.  
 London, Londini-um, -i, *n*.  
 Luci-us, -i, *m*.  
 Lyconid-es, -is, *m*.  
 Lyeurg-us, -i, *m*.  
 Lyr-a, -ae, *f*.

Mamili-us, -i, *m*.  
 Manili-us, -i, *m*.  
 Marc-us, -i, *m*.  
 Mari-us, -i, *m*.  
 Massili-a, -ae, *f*.  
 May, Mai-us, Mai.  
 Meneni-us, -i, *m*.  
 Mercury, Mercuri-us, -i, *m*.  
 Messen-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Messi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Minuci-us, -i, *m*.  
 Mitylen-c, -es, *f*.

Naevian, Naevi-us, -a, -um.  
 Naples, Neapol-is, -is, *f*.  
 Nervi-i, -orum, *m*.  
 Num-a, -ae, *m*.  
 Numanti-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Numit-or, -ōris, *m*.

Octavi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Orphe-us, -i, *m*.  
 Ovid, Ovidi-us, -i, *m*.

Papiri-us, -i, *m*.  
 Peloponnes-us, -i, *f*.  
 Perdicc-as, -ae, *m*.  
 Philip, Philipp-us, -i, *m*.  
 Philt-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Phoeb-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pirae-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pisistrat-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pis-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Plat-o, -ōnis, *m*.  
 Plauti-us, -i, *m*.  
 Polyclet-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pometi-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Pompey, Pompei-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pont-us, -i, *m*.  
 Porsenn-a, -ae, *m*.  
 Postumi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Proc-as, -ae, *m*.  
 Publi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pyram-us, -i, *m*.  
 Pyrenees, Mons Pyrenaeus.  
 Pythian, Pythi-us, -a, -um.

Quinti-us, -i, *m*.  
 Quint-us, -i, *m*.

Regillus, Lacus Regillus, *m*.  
 Rem-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rhine, Rhen-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rhone, Rhodan-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rom-a, -ae, *f*.  
 Roman, Roman-us, -a, -um.  
 Romul-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rosci-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rufi-us, -i, *m*.  
 Rull-us, -i, *m*.

Sabine, Sabin-us, -a, -um.  
 Saguntine, Saguntin-us, -a, -um.  
 Sagunt-um, -i, n.  
 Samnite, Samn-is, -itis  
 Saturn, Saturn-us, -i.  
 Scipi-o, -ōnis, m.  
 Sempronius, -i, m.  
 Sequan-i, -orum, m.  
 Servili-us, -i, m.  
 Servi-us, -i, m.  
 Sext-us, -i, m.  
 Sibylline, Sibyllin-us, -a, -um.  
 Sicily, Sicili-a, -ae, f.  
 Silvian, Silvi-us, -a, -um.  
 Sinuess-a, -ae, f.  
 Socrat-es, -is, m.  
 Sol-on, -ōnis, m.  
 Soract-e, -is, n.  
 Spain, Hispani-a, -ae, f.  
 Spaniard, Hispan-us, -a, -um.  
 Spartan, Spartan-us, -a, -um.  
 Spuri-us, -i, m.  
 Stat-or, -ōris, m.  
 Stol-o, -ōnis, m.  
 Suev-i, -orum, m.  
 Sull-a, -ae, m.  
 Sulpici-us, -i, m.  
 Syracusan, Syracusan-us, -a, -um.  
 Syracuse, Syracus-ae, -arum, f.  
 Tanet-um, -i, n.  
 Tarent-um, -i, n.  
 Tarpeian, Mons Tarpeius.

Tarquini-us, -i, m.  
 Terenti-us, -i, m.  
 Termin-us, -i, m.  
 Themistocl-es, -is, m.  
 Tiber, Tiber-is, -is, m.  
 Titi-a, -ae, f.  
 Tit-us, -i, m.  
 Transalpine, Transalpin-us, -a, -um.  
 Trevir-i, -orum, m.  
 Trojan, Trojan-us, -a, -um.  
 Troy, Troj-a, -ae, f.  
 Tulli-a, -ae, f.  
 Tull-us, -i, m.  
 Tuscan, Tusc-us, -a, -um.  
 Tuscul-um, -i, n.  
 Ubi-i, -orum, m.  
 Utic-a, -ae, f.  
 Vari-us, -i, m.  
 Varr-o, -ōnis, m.  
 Var-us, -i, m.  
 Vei-i, -orum, m.  
 Venus, Veneris, f.  
 Vest-a, -ae, f.  
 Vitelli-i, -orum, m.  
 Volsc-i, -orum, m.  
 Volusen-us, -i, m.  
 Voren-us, -i, m.  
 Xenoph-on, -ontis, m.  
 Zen-o, -ōnis, m.





S. Marcan  
Leeds Grammar  
School  
or  
25<sup>th</sup> Chad's Villas  
For Headingley  
Leeds



הספריה הלאומית

S 25 V 11755

Kennedy, Benjamin Hall,  
Exercises on the shorter Latin

C.1



2855186-10

Z1G

28 111

